

## M393C NOTES: TOPICS IN MATHEMATICAL PHYSICS

ARUN DEBRAY  
DECEMBER 15, 2017

These notes were taken in UT Austin's M393C (Topics in Mathematical Physics) class in Fall 2017, taught by Thomas Chen. I live-TeXed them using vim, so there may be typos; please send questions, comments, complaints, and corrections to [a.debray@math.utexas.edu](mailto:a.debray@math.utexas.edu). Any mistakes in the notes are my own. Thanks to Yanlin Cheng for fixing some typos.

### CONTENTS

1.	The Lagrangian formalism for classical mechanics: 8/31/17	1
2.	The Hamiltonian formalism for classical mechanics: 9/5/17	6
3.	The Arnold-Yost-Liouville theorem and KAM theory: 9/7/17	10
4.	The Schrödinger equation and the Wigner transform: 9/12/17	13
5.	The semiclassical limit of the Schrödinger equation: 9/14/17	17
6.	The stationary phase approximation: 9/19/17	20
7.	Spectral theory: 9/21/17	22
8.	The spectral theory of Schrödinger operators: 9/26/17	24
9.	The Birman-Schwinger principle: 9/28/17	26
10.	Lieb-Thirring inequalities: 10/3/17	29
11.	Scattering states: 10/5/17	32
12.	Stability of the First Kind: 10/10/17	35
13.	Density matrices and stability of matter: 10/12/17	39
14.	Multi-nucleus systems and electrostatic inequalities: 10/17/17	42
15.	Stability of matter for many-body systems: 10/19/17	46
16.	Introduction to quantum field theory and Fock space: 10/24/17	50
17.	Creation and annihilation operators: 10/26/17	53
18.	Second quantization: 10/31/17	56
19.	Bose-Einstein condensation: 11/2/17	60
20.	Strichartz estimates and the nonlinear Schrödinger equation: 11/7/17	63
21.	: 11/9/17	63
22.	: 11/14/17	66
23.	: 11/16/17	66
24.	Quantum electrodynamics and the isospectral renormalization group: 11/28/17	66
25.	More isospectral renormalization: 11/30/17	69
26.	The renormalization dynamic system: 12/5/17	71
27.	Renormalization and eigenvalues: 12/7/17	74

Lecture 1.

### The Lagrangian formalism for classical mechanics: 8/31/17

The audience in this class has a very mixed background, so this course cannot and will not assume any physics background. We'll first discuss classical and Lagrangian mechanics. Quantum mechanics is, of

course, more fundamental, and though historically people obtained quantum mechanical mechanics from classical mechanics, it should be possible to go in the other direction.

We'll start, though, with classical and Lagrangian mechanics. This involves understanding symplectic and Poisson structures, and the principle of least action, the beautiful insight that classical mechanics can be formulated variationally; there is a Lagrangian  $L$  and an action functional

$$S = \int_{t_0}^{t_1} L dt,$$

and the system evolves through paths that extremize the action functional.

The history of the transition from classical mechanics to quantum mechanics to quantum field theory happened extremely quickly in the historical sense, all fitting into one lifetime. JJ Thompson discovered the electron in 1897, and in 1925, GP Thompson, CJ Dawson, and LH Germer discovered that it had mass. This led people to discover some inconsistencies with classical physics on small scales, ushering in quantum mechanics, with all of the famous names: Einstein, Schrödinger, Heisenberg, and more. The basic equations of quantum mechanics fall in linear dispersive PDE for functions living in the Hilbert space, typically  $L^2$  or the Sobolev space  $H^1$  (since energy involves a derivative).

One of the key new constants in quantum mechanics is *Planck's constant*  $\hbar := h/2\pi$ . It has the same units as the classical action  $S$ , and therefore they are comparable. There is a sense in which quantum mechanics is the regime in which  $S/\hbar \approx 1$ , and classical mechanics is the regime in which  $S/\hbar \gg 1$ . In this sense, quantum mechanics is the physics of very small scales. Sometimes people take a "semiclassical limit," and say they're letting  $\hbar \rightarrow 0$ , but this makes no sense:  $\hbar$  is a physical quantity. Instead, it's more accurate to say taking a semiclassical limit lets  $(S/\hbar)^{-1} \rightarrow 0$ .

If you want to analyze a fixed number of electrons, life is good. They will always be there, and so on. But this is a problem for photons, as there are physical processes which create photons, and processes which destroy photons. Thus imposing a fixed number of quantum particles is a constraint — and the theory which describes the quantum physics of arbitrary numbers of quantum particles, quantum field theory, was worked out a little later. In this case, the Hilbert space is a direct sum over the Hilbert subspace of 1-particle states, 2-particle states, etc., and is called *Fock space*. The symplectic and Poisson structures of classical mechanics, transformed into commutation relations of operators in quantum mechanics, is again interpreted as commutation relations of creation and annihilation operators.

The mathematics of quantum field theory is rich and diverse, drawing in more PDE as well as large amounts of geometry and topology. But there's a problem — many important integrals and power series don't converge. And this is not a formal series problem: it's too central. Physicists have used renormalization as a formal trick to solve these divergences; it feels like a dirty trick that produces incredibly accurate results agreeing with experiment. But again there are problems: renormalization expresses Fock space and the commutation relations in terms of the noninteracting case, and the results you get don't necessarily agree with what you did *a priori*.

For example, quantum field theory contains a Hamiltonian  $H$  whose spectrum is of interest. One can imagine starting with the noninteracting Hamiltonian  $H_0$  and perturbing it by some small operator  $W$ :  $H := H_0 + W$ . You're often interested in the resolvent

$$\begin{aligned} R(z) &= (H - z)^{-1} \\ &= (H_0 - z)^{-1} \sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \left( W(H_0 - z)^{-1} \right)^{\ell}. \end{aligned}$$

The issue is that adding  $W$  does not do nice things to the spectrum, and this is part of the complexity of quantum field theory.

Let  $\lambda$  denote the interaction, and  $N$  denote the number of particles, and suppose  $\lambda \sim 1/N$  as we let  $N \rightarrow \infty$ . Then, the equations describing the mean field theory for this system are complicated, typically nonlinear PDEs. Typical examples include the nonlinear Schrödinger equation, the nonlinear Hartree equation, the Vlasov equation, or the Boltzmann equation. We'll hopefully see some of these equations in this class.

This is a lot of stuff that's tied together in complicated and potentially confusing ways, and hopefully in this class we'll learn how to make sense of it.

**Classical mechanics and symplectic geometry** In classical mechanics, we think of objects in idealized ways, e.g. thinking of a stone as a point mass at its center of mass. Thus, we're studying the motion of idealized point masses (or particles, in the strictly classical sense). We do this by letting time be  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ ; at a time  $t$ , the particles  $x_1, \dots, x_N$  have positions  $\mathbf{q}(t) := (q_1(t), \dots, q_N(t))$ , with  $q_i(t) \in \mathbb{R}^d$ ; these are called "generalized coordinates."

Classical mechanics says that the kinematics of particles can be completely described by their position and velocity. Thus the motion of a system is completely determined by  $\mathbf{q}(t)$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}(t) := \frac{d\mathbf{q}}{dt}$ .

The next question: what determines the motion? The answer is the Newtonian equations of motion:  $\ddot{\mathbf{q}}$  is expressed as a function of  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$  and  $\mathbf{q}$  using *Hamilton's principle*, also known as the *principle of least action*.

- (1) Let  $\mathbf{q} \in C^2([t_0, t_1], \mathbb{R}^{Nd})$  be a curve in  $\mathbb{R}^{Nd}$ . We associate to  $\mathbf{q}$  a weight function  $L(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$  called the *Lagrangian*.
- (2) Given  $\mathbf{q}$  as above, define the *action functional*

$$S[\mathbf{q}] := \int_{t_0}^{t_1} L(\mathbf{q}(t), \dot{\mathbf{q}}(t)) dt.$$

- (3) Then, among all  $C^2$  curves with  $\mathbf{q}(t_0)$  and  $\mathbf{q}(t_1)$  fixed, the curve that minimizes  $S$  is the one that satisfies the equations of motion.

Now let  $\mathbf{q}_s(t)$  be a  $C^2$  family of curves  $[t_0, t_1] \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{Nd}$  and that  $\mathbf{q}_0$  minimizes  $S$ . Then,

$$\partial_s|_{s=0} S[\mathbf{q}_s] = 0.$$

We can apply this to the Lagrangian to derive the equations of motion.

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_s|_{s=0} S[\mathbf{q}_s] &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} ((\nabla_{\mathbf{q}_s} L) \cdot \partial_s \mathbf{q}_s(t) + (\nabla_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}_s} L) \cdot \partial_s \dot{\mathbf{q}}_s(t)) dt \Big|_{s=0} \\ &= \int_{t_0}^{t_1} (\nabla_{\mathbf{q}_s} L - (\nabla_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}_s} L)^\bullet) \Big|_{s=0} \cdot \underbrace{\partial_s|_{s=0} \mathbf{q}_s(t)}_{\delta \mathbf{q}(t)} dt + (\nabla_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}_0} L) \cdot \underbrace{(\partial_s|_{s=0} \dot{\mathbf{q}}(t))}_{=0} \Big|_{t_0}^t, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\delta \mathbf{q}(t)$  is the variation. For all variations, this is nonzero. Thus, minimizers of  $S$  satisfy the *Euler-Lagrange equations*

$$(1.1) \quad \nabla_{\mathbf{q}} L - (\nabla_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}} L)^\bullet = 0.$$

We'll now impose some conditions on  $L$  that come from reasonable physical principles.

**Additivity:** if we analyze a system  $A \cup B$  which is a union of two subsystems  $A$  and  $B$  that don't interact, then

$$L_{A \cup B} = L_A + L_B.$$

**Uniqueness:** Assume  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  differ only by a total time derivative of a function  $f(\mathbf{q}(t), t)$ ; then, they should give rise to the same equations of motion:

$$\begin{aligned} S_2 &= S_1 + \int_{t_0}^{t_1} \partial_t f(\mathbf{q}(t), t) dt \\ &= S_1 + f(\mathbf{q}(t_1), t_1) - f(\mathbf{q}(t_0), t_0), \end{aligned}$$

so the minimizers for  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are the same.

**Galilei relativity principle:** The physical laws of a closed system are invariant under the symmetries of the *Galilei group* parameterized by  $a, v \in \mathbb{R}^d$ ,  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $R \in \text{SO}(d)$ , the group element  $g_{a,v,R,b}$  acts by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{q} &\longmapsto a + vt + R\mathbf{q} \\ t &\longmapsto t + b. \end{aligned}$$

That is, in each component  $j$ ,  $q_j \mapsto a + vt + Rq_j$ .

This actually determines  $L$  for a system consisting of a single particle. By homogeneity of space (by the Galilei group contains translations),  $L$  can only depend on  $V = \dot{q}$ . Since space is isotropic (because the Galilei group contains rotations),  $L$  should depend on  $v^2$ . Next, the Euler-Lagrange equations imply

$$\frac{d}{dt} \frac{\partial L}{\partial v} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} = 0,$$

and since  $L$  does not depend on  $q$ ,  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial q} = 0$ , so  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial v}$  must be a constant.

Now we consider Galilei invariance of  $v$ . If  $v \mapsto v + \varepsilon$ , the equations of motion must be invariant, so

$$L[(v')^2] = L[(v + \varepsilon)^2] = L(v^2) + \frac{\partial L}{\partial v^2} 2v \cdot \varepsilon + O(\varepsilon),$$

and this should only differ by a total time derivative  $\dot{q}$ :

$$F(\dot{q}) \cdot \dot{q} = \partial_t G,$$

where  $F(\dot{q})$  is a constant, and  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial v^2}$  is also constant. This latter constant is denoted  $m$ , and called the *mass*, and the Lagrangian expresses its kinetic energy:

$$L(v) = \frac{1}{2} m v^2.$$

Now imagine adding  $N$  particles, which we assume don't interact. Then additivity tells us they have masses  $m_1, \dots, m_N$ , and the Lagrangian is

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N m_j v_j^2.$$

If the particles are interacting, there's some potential function  $U(q_1, \dots, q_N)$ , and the Lagrangian is instead

$$L = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^N m_j v_j^2 - U(q_1, \dots, q_N).$$

Now, by (1.1),

$$m_j \ddot{q}_j = -\partial_{q_j} U = F,$$

and this is called the *force*. This is Newton's second law  $F = ma$ .

**Symmetries and conservation laws** There's a general result called Noether's theorem which shows that any symmetry of a physical system leads to a conserved quantity. We'll see the presence of symmetry in classical mechanics and then how it changes in quantum mechanics.

For example, the systems we saw above had symmetries under time translation invariance  $t \mapsto t + b$ , so the Lagrangian doesn't depend on  $t$ , just on  $\mathbf{q}$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt} L &= \sum_j \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_j} \dot{q}_j + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \ddot{q}_j \right) \\ &= \frac{d}{dt} \sum_{j=1}^N \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \right) \cdot \dot{q}_j, \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$\frac{d}{dt} \underbrace{\left( \sum_{j=1}^N \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \cdot \dot{q}_j - L \right)}_E = 0.$$

The quantity  $E$  is the *energy* of the system, and time translation invariance tells us that energy is conserved. The component  $p_j := \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j}$  is called the  $j^{\text{th}}$  *canonical momentum*.

The homogeneity of space, told to us by invariance under the Galilei translations  $q_j \mapsto q_j + \varepsilon$ , tells us that

$$\begin{aligned}\delta L &= \sum_i \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \cdot \varepsilon \\ &= \varepsilon \frac{d}{dt} \sum \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the quantity

$$\mathbf{p} := \sum_{j=1}^N \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j}$$

is conserved, and is constant. This is called the *total momentum*, so translation-invariance gives you conservation of momentum. In the same way, rotation-invariance around any center gives you conservation of angular momentum around any center.

**Hamiltonian dynamics** The Euler-Lagrange equations express  $\ddot{\mathbf{q}}$  as a second-order ODE. One might want to reformulate this into a first-order ODE; there are many ways to do this. There's one that's particularly important. Since

$$p_j = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}),$$

then it looks like one could solve for  $\dot{\mathbf{q}}$  in terms of  $\mathbf{p}$  and  $\mathbf{q}$ .

**Lemma 1.2.** *Let  $f \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n, \mathbb{R})$  be such that its Hessian  $D^2f$  is uniformly positive definite, i.e. there's an  $\alpha > 0$  such that*

$$D^2f(x)(h, h) = \sum_{i,j} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} h_j h_i \geq \alpha \|h\|^2$$

*uniformly in  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , then there is a unique solution to*

$$Df(x) = y$$

*for every  $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $g(x, y) := f(x) - \langle x, y \rangle$ . Then,  $\nabla_x g(x, y) = \nabla f - y$ , and  $D^2g = D^2f$ . Hence it suffices to check for  $y = 0$ .

The positive definite assumption on  $D^2f$  means  $f$  is strictly convex, and hence has at most a single critical point, at which  $\nabla f = 0$ . Thus it remains to check that there's at least one solution.

If you Taylor-expand, you get that

$$f(x) = f(0) + \langle Df(0), x \rangle + \frac{1}{2} D^2f(0)(x, x) + \cdots,$$

so for all  $x$ ,

$$f(x) \geq f(0) - |\nabla f(0)| |x| + \frac{\alpha}{2} |x|^2.$$

Thus, there's an  $R > 0$  such that if  $|x| \geq R$ , then  $f(x) \geq f(0)$ , so  $f$  has at most one minimum in the ball  $\overline{B_R(0)}$ , so by compactness, it has a minimum  $x_0$ , which must be the global minimum, so  $Df(x_0) = 0$ .  $\square$

**Definition 1.3.** Suppose  $f$  is continuous on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Then, its *Legendre transform* or *Legendre-Fenchel transform* is

$$f^*(y) := \sup_{x \in \mathbb{R}^n} (\langle y, x \rangle - f(x)).$$

You can think of this as measuring the distance from the graph of  $f$  to the line cut out by  $\langle y, x \rangle$  (i.e. between the two points with minimum distance).

Lecture 2.

**The Hamiltonian formalism for classical mechanics: 9/5/17**

Last time, we discussed Lemma 1.2, that if  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is  $C^2$  and its Hessian is uniformly positive definite, then there's a unique solution to  $\nabla f(x) = y$  for all  $y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . We then defined the Legendre-Fenchel transform of  $f$ :  $f^*(y)$  geometrically means the minimal distance from  $f(x)$  to the hyperplane  $\langle y, x \rangle = 0$ . It has the following key properties:

**Theorem 2.1.** Let  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a  $C^2$  function with uniformly positive definite Hessian. Then,

(1)

$$f^*(y) = \langle y, x(y) \rangle - f(x(y)),$$

where  $x(y)$  is the unique solution to  $\nabla f(x) = y$  guaranteed by Lemma 1.2, and

(2)  $f^*(y)$  is  $C^2$  and strictly convex.(3) If  $n = 1$ ,  $\nabla(f^*) = (\nabla f)^{-1}$ .(4) For all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,

$$f(x) + f^*(y) \geq \langle y, x \rangle,$$

with equality iff  $x = x(y)$  is the unique solution to  $\nabla f(x) = y$ .

(5) The Legendre-Fenchel transform is involutive, i.e.  $(f^*)^* = f$ .

We'll use this in the Hamiltonian formalism of classical mechanics. One motivation for the Hamiltonian formalism is that the Lagrangian formalism produces second-order ODEs, and it would be nice to have an approach that gives first-order equations. There are many ways to do that, but this one has particularly nice properties.

Suppose we have generalized coordinates  $\mathbf{q}$  and  $\mathbf{p} = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}}$ . You might ask whether we can solve for  $\dot{q}_i = \dot{q}_i(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})$ . If we assume  $D_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}}^2 L(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$  is uniformly positive definite, then  $\mathbf{p} = \nabla_{\dot{\mathbf{q}}} L(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})$  has a unique solution.

**Definition 2.2.** The *Hamiltonian*  $H$  is the Legendre-Fenchel transform of  $L$  for  $\mathbf{q}$  fixed, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} H(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) &:= \sup_{\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n} (\langle \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{v} \rangle - L(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{v})) \\ &= \langle \mathbf{p}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) \rangle - L(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}}(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})). \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.3.** Assume the matrix

$$(2.4) \quad \left[ \frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial \dot{q}_i \partial \dot{q}_j} \right]$$

is uniformly positive definite. Then, the Euler-Lagrange equations

$$\left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\mathbf{q}}} \right)^{\bullet} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \mathbf{q}} = 0$$

are equivalent to

$$(2.5) \quad \dot{\mathbf{q}} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{p}}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{p}} = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{q}}.$$

(2.4) is called the *mass matrix* of the system, and (2.5) is called the *Hamiltonian equations of motion*.

*Proof.* Since  $p_j = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_i} &= \dot{q}_i + \sum_{j=1}^n \left( p_j \frac{\partial \dot{q}_j}{\partial p_i} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \frac{\partial \dot{q}_j}{\partial p_i} \right) \\ &= \dot{q}_i. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, since  $\frac{\partial q_j}{\partial q_i} = \delta_{ij}$  and  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} = p_j$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial H}{\partial q_i} &= \sum_{j=1}^n \left( p_j \frac{\partial \dot{q}_j}{\partial q_i} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial q_j} \frac{\partial q_j}{\partial q_i} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_j} \frac{\partial \dot{q}_j}{\partial q_i} \right) \\ &= - \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}_i} \right)^{\bullet} = \dot{p}_i.\end{aligned}\quad \boxtimes$$

This leads to the Hamiltonian formalism, which starts with the Hamiltonian and works towards the physics from there. We begin on a phase space  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$  with coordinates  $(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})$ , and a Hamiltonian  $H: \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ . Let

$$J := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \mathbf{1}_n \\ -\mathbf{1}_n & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

denote the *symplectic normal matrix*.<sup>1</sup>

The *Hamiltonian vector field* for this system is

$$X_H := J \nabla H = \begin{bmatrix} \nabla_{\mathbf{p}} H \\ -\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} H \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then, the Hamiltonian equations of motion (2.5) may be expressed in terms of the flow for  $X_H$ .

This “Hamiltonian structure” on  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$  is closely related to a complex structure:  $J^2 = -1$  is closely reminiscent of  $i^2 = -1$ . Indeed, if

$$\mathbf{z} := (\mathbf{q} + i\mathbf{p}),$$

then

$$\begin{aligned}i\dot{\mathbf{z}} &= i(\dot{\mathbf{q}} + i\dot{\mathbf{p}}) \\ &= i(\nabla_{\mathbf{p}} H - i\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} H) \\ &= (\nabla_{\mathbf{q}} + i\nabla_{\mathbf{p}})H.\end{aligned}$$

This is an example of a *Wirtinger derivative*:

$$\begin{aligned}\partial_z &= \frac{1}{2}(\partial_x - i\partial_y) \\ \partial_{\bar{z}} &= \frac{1}{2}(\partial_x + i\partial_y)\end{aligned}$$

**Example 2.6** (Harmonic oscillator). Let

$$H(q, p) = \frac{1}{2}q^2 + \frac{1}{2}p^2,$$

so

$$H(z, \bar{z}) = \frac{1}{2}z\bar{z}.$$

In this case, the Hamiltonian equations of motion are

$$\begin{aligned}i\dot{z} &= 2\partial_{\bar{z}}H = z \\ z(0) &= z_0,\end{aligned}$$

so we recover

$$z(t) = z_0 e^{it},$$

as usual for a harmonic oscillator. ◀

We can also study Hamiltonian PDEs, which include several interesting systems of equations. But they got erased before I could write them down. : ( One of them includes the *nonlinear Schrödinger equation*: for  $x \in \mathbb{R}^d$ , the system

$$\mathcal{H}[u, \bar{u}] = \int \left( \frac{1}{2} |\nabla u|^2 + \frac{1}{2p} |u|^{2p} \right) dx,$$

---

<sup>1</sup>More generally, one can formulate this system on any symplectic manifold, in which case  $J$  is the symplectic form in Darboux coordinates. But we won't worry about this right now.

which leads to the equations of motion (the Schrödinger equation)

$$i\dot{u} = -\Delta u + |u|^{2p-2}u.$$

The solutions of these equations tend to be interesting: Hamiltonian flow (the flow generated by  $X_H$ ) isn't a gradient flow, but rather gradient flow twisted by  $J$ . We call this flow  $\Phi_t: \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2n}$ , with  $x(t) = \Phi_t(x_0)$  and  $x(t) = \Phi_{t,s}(x(s))$ .

**Theorem 2.7.**  $H$  is conserved by  $\Phi_t$ .

*Proof.*

$$\frac{d}{dt}H(x(t)) = \nabla_x H \cdot \dot{x} = \nabla_x H \cdot J \nabla_x H = 0,$$

because  $J$  is skew-symmetric. □

**Definition 2.8.** In this situation, the *symplectic form* is the skew-symmetric form  $\omega \in \Lambda^2((\mathbb{R}^{2n})^*)$  defined by

$$\omega(X, Y) := \langle Y, JX \rangle.$$

The pair  $(\mathbb{R}^{2n}, \omega)$  is a symplectic vector space; the space of invertible matrices preserving this form is called the *symplectic group*

$$\mathrm{Sp}(2n, \mathbb{R}) := \{M \in \mathrm{GL}_{2n}(\mathbb{R}) \mid M^T J M = J\}.$$

Now we can prove some properties of the Hamiltonian flow.

**Theorem 2.9.** Let  $\Phi_t$  be the Hamiltonian flow generated by  $X_H$ . Then,

- (1)  $x(t) = \Phi_{t,s}(x(s))$ ,
- (2)  $\Phi_{s,s} = \mathrm{id}$ , and
- (3)  $D\Phi_{t,s}(x) \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n, \mathbb{R})$ .

Conversely, if  $\Phi_{t,s}$  is the local flow generated by a vector field  $X$  such that locally (in  $x$ ) (3) holds, then  $X$  is locally Hamiltonian, in that there's a  $G$  such that  $X = X_G$ .

**Definition 2.10.** A diffeomorphism  $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2n}$  with  $D\phi \in \mathrm{Sp}(2n, \mathbb{R})$  is called a *symplectomorphism*.

*Proof sketch of Theorem 2.9.* Since

$$\partial_t D\Phi_{t,s}(x) = DX_H(\Phi_{t,s}(x)) \cdot D\Phi_{t,s}(x),$$

then it suffices to check that if

$$\Gamma(t, s, x) := D\Phi_{t,s}^T(x) J D\Phi_{t,s}(x),$$

then

$$\frac{d}{dt}\Gamma = 0.$$

**Definition 2.11.** The *Liouville measure*  $\mu_L$  on  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$  is the measure induced by  $\omega^{\wedge n}$ , i.e.

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} f d\mu_L := \int_{\mathbb{R}^{2n}} f \omega^{\wedge n}.$$

**Theorem 2.12 (Liouville).** Let  $\Phi_{t,s}$  be the Hamiltonian flow. Then, for every Borel set  $B$ ,  $|\Phi_{t,s}(B)| = |B|$ . Hence  $\Phi_{t,s}$  preserves the Lebesgue measure and the Liouville measure.

*Proof.* If  $\varphi: \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2n}$  is a diffeomorphism, then

$$\int_B f(x) dx = \int_{\varphi^{-1}(B)} (f \circ \varphi) |\det D\varphi(x)| dx,$$

and  $\det D\Phi_t = 1$ . □

The next theorem is a conservation property.

**Theorem 2.13.** Let  $\Phi_{t,s}$  be the flow generated by an arbitrary vector field  $X$ ,  $D \subset \mathbb{R}^{2n}$  be a bounded region, and  $D_{t,s} := \Phi_{t,s}(D)$ . Then, for every  $f \in C^1(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{D_{t,s}} f dx = \int_{D_{t,s}} (\partial_t f + \mathrm{div}(fX)) dx.$$



*Proof.* By the group property ( $\Phi_{t,s} = \Phi_{t,s_1} \circ \Phi_{s_1,s}$ ) it suffices to prove it for  $s = 0$  and at  $t = 0$ . In this case

$$\left. \frac{d}{dt} \right|_{t=0} \int_{D_t} f \, dx = \left. \frac{d}{dt} \right|_{t=0} \int_D (f \circ \Phi_t) \det D\Phi_t \, dx$$

Since  $D\Phi_t = \mathbf{1} + tDX + O(t^2)$ , then  $\det(D\Phi_t) = 1 + t \operatorname{tr}(DX) + O(t^2)$  and hence

$$\begin{aligned} &= \int_D ((\partial_t f + \nabla f \cdot X) + f \operatorname{div} X) \, dx \\ &= \int_D (\partial_t f + \operatorname{div} fX) \, dx. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Corollary 2.14.** Any function  $f(t, x)$  for which the matter content

$$MC(f)(t) := \int_{\Phi_{t,s}(D)} f(x, t) \, dx$$

remains constant (equivalently,  $\frac{d}{dt} MC(f)(t) = 0$ ), must satisfy the continuity equation

$$(2.15) \quad \partial_t f + \operatorname{div}(fX) = 0.$$

In physically interesting cases, the matter content actually represents how much mass is in the system. In the Hamiltonian case,  $\operatorname{div} X_H = 0$ , so

$$\partial_t f + \nabla f \cdot X_H = 0$$

is equivalent to

$$\partial_t f + \nabla f \cdot J\nabla H = 0.$$

We can rewrite this in terms of the *Poisson bracket*

$$\{f, H\} := \langle \nabla f, J\nabla H \rangle,$$

producing the equation

$$\partial_t f + \{f, H\} = 0.$$

The Poisson bracket can also be defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \{f, H\} &= \omega(X_f, X_H) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial q_j} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p_j} - \frac{\partial H}{\partial q_j} \frac{\partial f}{\partial p_j} \right). \end{aligned}$$

We'll see related phenomena in the quantum-mechanical case. What we talk about next, though, will not reappear in quantum mechanics, but it's too beautiful to ignore completely.

**Definition 2.16.** An *integral of motion* is a  $C^1$  function  $g: \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  constant along the orbits of the Hamiltonian. Equivalently,

$$\frac{d}{dt} g(x(t)) = \{g, H\} = 0.$$

Two integrals of motion  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are *in involution* if  $\{g_1, g_2\} = 0$ .

Notice that  $\{g, g\} = 0$  always.

Generally, Hamiltonian systems are incredibly difficult to solve. There are some cases where they can be solved by hand, e.g. by quadrature classically. It would be nice to know when such a solution exists. If you can find  $n$  integrals of motion that are in involution with each other, you can heuristically reduce the equations into something tractable; this is the content of the Arnold-Yost-Liouville theorem.

**Theorem 2.17** (Arnold-Yost-Liouville). *On the phase space  $(\mathbb{R}^{2n}, \omega)$ , assume we have  $n$  integrals of motion  $G_1, \dots, G_n$  which are in involution; further, assume  $G_1 = H$ . Let  $\mathbf{G} = (G_1, \dots, G_n): \mathbb{R}^{2n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , and consider its level set*

$$\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c}) := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^{2n} \mid \mathbf{G}(x) = \mathbf{c}\},$$

for some  $\mathbf{c} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Assume that the 1-forms  $\{dG_j\}$  are linearly independent (equivalently, the gradients  $\nabla G_j$  are linearly independent). Then,

(1)  $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c})$  is a smooth manifold that's invariant under the flow generated by  $X_H$ , and

- (2) if  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  is compact and connected, it is diffeomorphic to an  $n$ -torus  $T^n := S^1 \times \cdots \times S^1$ .  
 (3) The Hamiltonian flow of  $H$  determines a quasiperiodic motion

$$(2.18) \quad \frac{d\boldsymbol{\varphi}}{dt} = \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{c}), \quad \frac{d\mathbf{I}}{dt} = \mathbf{0}$$

with initial data  $(\boldsymbol{\varphi}_0, \mathbf{I}_0)$ .

- (4) The Hamiltonian equations of motion can be integrated by quadrature:

$$(2.19) \quad \begin{aligned} \mathbf{I}(t) &= \mathbf{I}_0 \\ \boldsymbol{\varphi}(t) &= \boldsymbol{\varphi}_0 + \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{c})t. \end{aligned}$$

Here  $\mathbf{I}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\varphi}$  are the new coordinates for phase space in which the system can be solved.

We'll prove this next lecture, then move to quantum mechanics.

Lecture 3.

### The Arnold-Yost-Liouville theorem and KAM theory: 9/7/17

Today, we're going to prove the Arnold-Yost-Liouville theorem, Theorem 2.17. We keep the notation from that theorem and the notes before it.

One key takeaway from the theorem is that the Hamiltonian equations can be explicitly solved. That is, going from (2.18) to (2.19) is a particularly simple system of ODEs.

*Proof sketch of Theorem 2.17.* By assumption,  $\{\nabla G_j\}$  is linearly independent on  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$ . By the implicit function theorem,  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  is an  $n$ -dimensional submanifold of  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$ . The gradients  $\{\nabla G_j\}$  span the normal bundle of  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  because it's a level set for them.

Consider  $X_{G_j} := J\nabla G_j$ . It's a tangent vector:

$$(3.1) \quad \begin{aligned} \langle X_{G_j}, \nabla G_\ell \rangle &= \langle J\nabla G_j, \nabla G_\ell \rangle \\ &= -\langle J\nabla G_j, J\nabla G_\ell \rangle \\ &= \omega(X_{G_j}, X_{G_\ell}) \\ &= \{G_j, G_\ell\} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

for all  $j$  and  $\ell$ . We've produced  $n$  linearly independent tangent vectors at each point, so  $\{X_{G_j}\}_{j=1}^n$  spans  $T\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$ . In particular,  $X_H = X_{G_1}$  is tangent to  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$ , so  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  is invariant under its flow. This proves (1).

For part (2), we assume  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  is compact and connected. Let  $\phi_{t_j}^j$  denote the flow generated by  $X_{G_j}$ , so  $t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathbb{R}$  are separate time variables. Because  $\{G_j, G_\ell\} = 0$ , then  $G_\ell$  is invariant under  $\phi_{t_j}^j$  for any  $j$  and  $\ell$ . Thus  $\phi_{t_j}^j$  and  $\phi_{t_\ell}^\ell$  commute, so we may define

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{t}} := \phi_{t_1}^1 \circ \cdots \circ \phi_{t_n}^n.$$

Pick an  $x_0 \in \mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  and define  $\varphi: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  to send  $\mathbf{t} \mapsto \varphi_{\mathbf{t}}(x_0)$ . This is transitive in the sense that for all  $x \in \mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$ , there's a  $\boldsymbol{\tau} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that  $\varphi_{\boldsymbol{\tau}}(x_0) = x$ .

Since  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$  is compact but  $\mathbb{R}^n$  isn't,  $\varphi$  cannot be a bijection. Define

$$\Gamma_{x_0} := \{\mathbf{t} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \varphi_{\mathbf{t}}(x_0) = x_0\},$$

the *stationary group* of  $x_0$ . This is indeed an abelian group, because if  $\boldsymbol{\tau} \in \Gamma_{x_0}$ , then  $n\boldsymbol{\tau} \in \Gamma_{x_0}$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ : if you iterate a loop again and again, you still end up back where you started with. And clearly  $\mathbf{0} \in \Gamma_{x_0}$ .

Let  $\varepsilon_1 U$  be an  $\varepsilon_1$ -neighborhood of  $\mathbf{0}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $V_{\varepsilon_2}$  be an  $\varepsilon_2$ -neighborhood of  $x_0$  in  $\mathcal{M}_G(\mathbf{c})$ ; then, there are  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 > 0$  such that  $\varphi|_{U_{\varepsilon_1}}: U_{\varepsilon_1} \rightarrow V_{\varepsilon_2}$  is a diffeomorphism. Thus, for sufficiently small  $\varepsilon_2$ , there's no other fixed point in  $V_{\varepsilon_2}$ , which means  $\Gamma_{x_0}$  is a discrete subgroup of  $(\mathbb{R}^n, +)$ .

This means there are vectors  $\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n \in \mathbb{R}^n$  such that

$$\Gamma_{x_0} = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n m_i \mathbf{e}_i \mid m_1, \dots, m_n \in \mathbb{Z} \right\},$$

and that  $\varphi$  establishes an isomorphism

$$T^n \cong \mathbb{R}^n / \Gamma_{x_0} \longrightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c}).$$

This proves (2).

Now we need to make the change-of-variables in (3); these new variables are called *action-angle variables*. First note that  $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c})$  is a *Lagrangian submanifold*, i.e. it's half-dimensional and the restriction of  $\omega$  to it is 0 (it's *isotropic*; an isotropic submanifold of  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$  can be at most  $n$ -dimensional). This is because  $T\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c})$  is spanned by  $\{X_{G_j}\}$ , and in (3.1), we proved  $\omega(X_{G_j}, X_{G_\ell}) = \{G_j, G_\ell\} = 0$  for all  $j, \ell$ .

Consider the 1-form

$$\Theta := \sum_j p_j dq_j.$$

Then,

$$d\Theta = \sum_j dp_j \wedge dq_j = \omega,$$

so restricted to  $\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c})$ ,  $\Theta$  is a closed 1-form.

Let  $\{\gamma_j\}_{j=1}^n$  be a set of cycles whose homology classes generate  $H_1(\mathcal{M}_{\mathbf{G}}(\mathbf{c})) = H_1(T^n) \cong \mathbb{Z}^n$ . Then, the *action variables*

$$I_j(\mathbf{c}) := \frac{1}{2\pi} \oint_{\gamma_j} \Theta$$

is independent of the choice of cycle representative of the homology class of  $\gamma_j$ : if  $D$  is a 2-chain with  $\partial D = \gamma_j - \tilde{\gamma}_j$  (a cobordism or homotopy from  $\gamma_j$  to  $\tilde{\gamma}_j$ ), then by Stokes' theorem.

$$\oint_{\gamma_j} \Theta - \oint_{\tilde{\gamma}_j} \Theta = \int_D d\Theta = \int_D 0 = 0.$$

One can show that the assignment  $(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}) \mapsto (\boldsymbol{\varphi}, \mathbf{I})$  is symplectic, where  $\varphi_j$  is a variable parameterizing  $\gamma_j$  and is called an *angle variable* (since it's valued in  $S^1$ ). In these coordinates,  $H$  only depends on  $\mathbf{I}$ , not  $\boldsymbol{\varphi}$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\boldsymbol{\varphi}}{dt} &= \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{I}} = \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{c}) \\ \frac{d\mathbf{I}}{dt} &= -\frac{\partial H}{\partial \boldsymbol{\varphi}} = 0. \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

Sometimes the entires of  $\boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{c})$  are irrational relative to each other. In this case you'll get dense orbits in the torus, corresponding to lines with irrational slope in  $\mathbb{R}^{2n}$  before quotienting by the lattice  $\Gamma_{x_0}$ , and there will not be  $n$  integrals of motion.

**Kolmogorov-Arnold-Moser (KAM) theory.** More generally, if one doesn't have complete integrability, one can make weaker but still interesting statements. For example, one can envision a problem which is completely integrable in the absence of perturbations, and one can study what happens when the dependence on  $\boldsymbol{\varphi}$  is small:

$$H(\boldsymbol{\varphi}, \mathbf{I}) = H_0(\mathbf{I}) + \varepsilon H(\boldsymbol{\varphi}, \mathbf{I}).$$

Some systems will lose integrability, though understanding the precise ways they do so is very hard. Such a system is associated to a *frequency vector*  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_0 := \boldsymbol{\eta}(\mathbf{I}(t_0))$  satisfying the *Diophantine condition*

$$|\langle \boldsymbol{\eta}_0, \mathbf{n} \rangle| \geq \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{n} \rangle^\tau}$$

for all  $\mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$  for some  $\tau > 0$ . Here  $\langle \mathbf{x} \rangle := \sqrt{1 + |\mathbf{x}|^2}$  is the *Japanese bracket*. This quantitatively captures the qualitative idea that " $\boldsymbol{\eta}_0$  is poorly approximated by rationals."

In this setup, there exists an invariant torus under the flow of  $H$ . The proof involves renormalization group flow, though it was not originally discovered in those terms. It's a kind of recursive proof style, and

getting into the details would take a long time. It involves a great result called the *shadowing lemma*, which discusses the dynamics of a pendulum.

The pendulum has two equilibria: the bottom is stable ( $\varphi = 0$ ), and the top is unstable (both with no velocity). The phase space is two-dimensional, in  $\varphi$  and  $\dot{\varphi}$ , and some trajectories are shown in Figure 1. The curves with singularities are called *separatrices*.

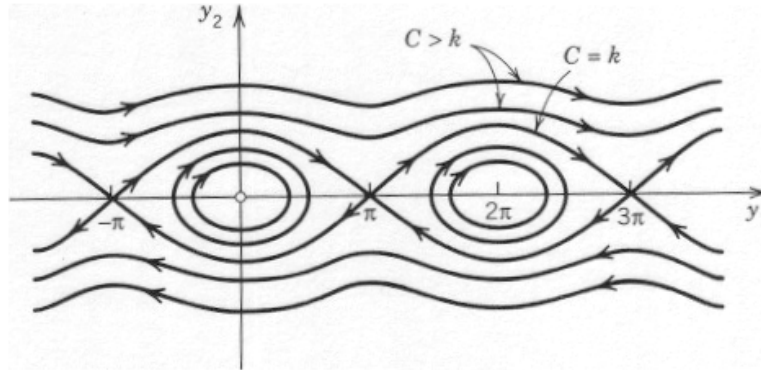


FIGURE 1. The phase diagram of a pendulum. Source: <https://physics.stackexchange.com/q/162577>.

Given a sequence of 0s and 1s, one may construct a parametric perturbation of the pendulum, regularly bumping it a small amount based on whether 0 or 1 is present.<sup>2</sup> The shadowing lemma states that these trajectories uniformly approximate real trajectories. There's a rich theory here: the proof is a fixed-point argument, and there's interesting geometry of the *homoclinic points*, where two trajectories meet. These tend to be concentrated near the unstable equilibrium.

**Quantum mechanics.** Though quantum mechanics was discovered later than classical mechanics, it's actually much more fundamental. This suggests that one can derive classical mechanics as some sort of limit of quantum mechanics where Planck's constant is small, and indeed we can do this. We'll do this in three ways.

- (1) The first is to use the Weiner transform to derive the Liouville equations from quantum mechanics in a semiclassical limit.
- (2) The second case is to use a path integral to rediscover the principle of least action.
- (3) The third way is to use observables and something called the Ehrenfest theorem.

Schrödinger discovered the *Schrödinger equation*, one of the cornerstones of quantum mechanics:

$$i\hbar\partial_t\psi = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\Delta\psi + V(x)\psi,$$

where  $\psi(t, x) \in L^2$  and

$$\|\psi\|_{L^2}^2 = \int |\psi(t, x)|^2 dx = 1,$$

Schrödinger arrived at this equation by (somewhat heuristically) studying quantization. Electrons had been observed (by de Broglie) to sometimes behave as particles and sometimes behave as waves. If an electron behaves like a particle, it has momentum  $\hbar k$ , where  $k$  is something called a *wave vector*. If you look at it as a wave, you get something like  $i\hbar\nabla e^{-ikx}$ , where  $P := i\hbar\nabla$  is called the *momentum operator*. The Schrödinger equation (a guess within his PhD thesis) replaced the true momentum in the Hamiltonian

$$H(x, p) = \frac{1}{2m}p^2 + V(x)$$

with the momentum operator  $i\hbar\nabla$ , giving is  $-\hbar^2\Delta$ .

<sup>2</sup>**TODO:** did I get this right?

Lecture 4.

**The Schrödinger equation and the Wigner transform: 9/12/17**

Today we're going to begin by asking, how does one derive (well, guess) the Schrödinger equation? This involves an interesting and relevant digression on the Hamilton-Jacobi equation.

From the principle of least action, we know the Euler-Lagrange equations (1.1). Assume  $q_0(t)$  is a solution to these equations. Take a one-parameter variation  $(s, q_s)$  from  $(t_0, q_0)$  to  $(t, q)$ . The *Hamilton principal function* is

$$S(t, q) = \int_{(t_0, q_0)}^{(t, q)} L(q(s), \dot{q}(s)) \, ds.$$

The variation with respect to  $q$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \delta S &= \int_{t_0}^t \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial q} \delta q + \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta \dot{q} \right) ds \\ &= \int_{t_0}^t \partial_s \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \right) ds \\ &= \left. \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}} \delta q \right|_{t_0}^t. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $p = \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{q}}$  and  $\delta q(t_0) = 0$ , this is

$$= (p \delta q)(t).$$

Hence,  $p = \frac{\partial S}{\partial q}$  and

$$L = \frac{dS}{dt} = \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} + \sum_j \frac{\partial S}{\partial q_j} \dot{q}_j,$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} &= L - \sum_j p_j \dot{q}_j \\ &= -H(q, \nabla_q S). \end{aligned}$$

This is called the *Hamilton-Jacobi equation*.

The link with the Schrödinger equation: let's take for an ansatz that we have a wavefunction

$$\psi(t, x) = a(t, x) e^{-iS(t, x)/\hbar}.$$

This does not come entirely out of left field: if you want to exponentiate the action, you have to make it dimensionless, and that's exactly what dividing by  $\hbar$  accomplishes. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} i\hbar \partial_t \psi &= i\hbar \dot{a} e^{-iS/\hbar} + \frac{\hbar}{i} \frac{\partial S}{\partial t} a e^{-iS/\hbar} \\ &= -H(q, \nabla S) \psi + O(\hbar) \\ &= \left( -\frac{1}{2} (\nabla S)^2 + V(x) \right) \psi + O(\hbar). \end{aligned}$$

Compare with

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{\hbar^2}{2} \Delta a e^{-iS/\hbar} &= -\frac{\hbar^2}{2} \left( -\frac{i}{\hbar} \Delta S + \left( \frac{i \nabla S}{\hbar} \right)^2 \right) a e^{-iS/\hbar} + O(\hbar) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\nabla S)^2 a e^{-iS/\hbar} + O(\hbar). \end{aligned}$$

Putting these together, we arrive at

$$i\hbar \partial_t \psi = \left( -\frac{\hbar^2}{2} \Delta + V(x) \right) \psi + O(\hbar).$$

That is, the Schrödinger equation is an  $O(\hbar)$ -deformation of the Hamilton-Jacobi equations.

We'd like to solve this equation. Precisely, given a  $\psi_0 \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , we'd like to find  $\psi$  such that

$$(4.1) \quad \begin{aligned} i\partial_t \psi &= -\Delta \psi + V(x)\psi = H\psi \\ \psi(t=0) &= \psi_0. \end{aligned}$$

Here  $H$  is the Hamiltonian.

We'd like to apply spectral theory to solve this, but  $-\Delta$  is unbounded, with the domain

$$\{f \in L^2 \mid \|-\Delta f\|_{L^2} < \infty\},$$

which is dense in  $L^2$ . It is self-adjoint, in the formal sense, but because it (and pretty much every operator in quantum mechanics) is unbounded, the analysis is trickier. For the moment, we'll consider a regularized Hamiltonian.

Recall that we have a Fourier transform  $\mathcal{F}: L^2(\mathbb{R}^n) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$  given by

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{f}(\xi) &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(x) e^{-i\xi \cdot x} dx \\ \check{g}(x) &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} g(\xi) e^{i\xi \cdot x} d\xi. \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $g \mapsto \check{g}$  is the inverse Fourier transform. This was defined on Schwartz-class functions by the formulas above, then using the Plancherel theorem and the density of Schwartz functions in  $L^2$ , it extends to  $L^2$ . The Laplacian turns into multiplication under the Fourier transform:

$$\mathcal{F}(-\Delta f)(\xi) = \xi^2 \hat{f}(\xi).$$

Now we will regularize the Laplacian: define

$$\mathcal{F}(-\Delta_R f)(\xi) := \xi^2 \chi_R(|\xi|) \hat{f}(\xi),$$

where  $R \gg 1$  and  $\chi_R$  is a smooth bump function equal to 1 on  $[0, R]$  and 0 on  $[2R, \infty)$ . Hence, for any finite  $R$ , Plancherel's theorem allows us to calculate that

$$\|-\Delta_R f\| \leq (2R)^2,$$

where we use the operator norm. If we assume that  $V \in L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , then

$$\|V(x)\psi\|_{L^2} \leq \|V\|_{L^\infty} \|\psi\|_{L^2},$$

so the regularized Hamiltonian

$$H_R := -\Delta_R + V$$

is bounded.

**Definition 4.2.** Let  $A$  be an operator on  $L^2$ , possibly unbounded. We define the adjoint operator  $A^*$  to satisfy  $(\phi, A\psi) = (A^*\phi, \psi)$  for all  $\phi, \psi \in L^2$ .  $A$  is *symmetric* if  $(\phi, A\psi) = (A\phi, \psi)$  for all  $\phi, \psi$  in the domain of  $A$ ; if  $A$  and  $A^*$  have the same domain, this implies  $A = A^*$ , and  $A$  is called *self-adjoint*.

**Theorem 4.3.** If  $A$  is bounded, then symmetric implies self-adjoint.

**Theorem 4.4.** If  $A$  is a bounded, self-adjoint operator, then there is an  $L^2$  solution to

$$(4.5) \quad \begin{aligned} i\partial_t \psi &= -\Delta \psi + V(x)\psi = A\psi \\ \psi(t=0) &= \psi_0, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\psi_0 \in L^2$ , which is given by

$$\psi(t) = e^{-itA} \psi_0.$$

Here,

$$(4.6) \quad e^A := \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{A^j}{j!}.$$

The particular case  $e^{-itA}$  is really nice: it's an isometry, because

$$\|e^{itA} \psi_0\|_{L^2} = \|\psi_0\|_{L^2},$$

and it's unitary:

$$(e^{itA})^* = e^{-itA} = (e^{itA})^{-1}.$$

**Exercise 4.7.** Check that the infinite sum in (4.6) converges, so that  $e^A$  is well-defined, and  $\|e^{itA}\| \leq e^{t\|A\|}$  for all  $t$ .

Now, what does this all mean physically? Quantum mechanics considers a particle whose position and velocity at time  $t$  are probabilistically given by some probability density  $\psi(t, x)$ , such that

$$\|\psi(t)\|_{L^2} = \|\psi_0\|_{L^2} = 1.$$

Measuring physical facts about this system is expressed through *observables*, self-adjoint operators  $A: L^2 \rightarrow L^2$ : the expected value of  $A$  with respect to the distribution  $\psi(t, x)$  is

$$\langle A \rangle_{\psi(t)} := \int \bar{\psi}(t, x) (A\psi)(t, x) dx = (\psi, A\psi).$$

Because this system satisfies the Schrödinger equation (4.1), there are several conserved quantities. Consider

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t(\psi, H\psi) &= \left( \frac{1}{i} H\psi, H\psi \right) + \left( \psi, H \left( \frac{1}{i} H\psi \right) \right) \\ &= - \left( H\psi, \frac{1}{i} H\psi \right) + \left( H\psi, \frac{1}{i} H\psi \right). \end{aligned}$$

In our case, we'd use  $H_R$  instead of  $H$ . The *energy* of the system is

$$E[\psi] := \frac{1}{2}(\psi, H\psi),$$

and by the above, this is a conserved quantity. The  $L^2$  *mass* is also conserved:

$$M[\psi] := \|\psi\|_{L^2}^2.$$

**The Wigner transform.** We'll now discuss the Wigner transform, a noncommutative version of the Fourier transform. As is customary with the Fourier transform and related phenomena, we will be cavalier about factors of  $2\pi$  arising from the transform; if you don't like this, it's possible to avoid with the harmonic analysts' convention

$$\widehat{f}(\xi) = \int f(x) e^{-2\pi i \xi \cdot x} dx,$$

where making these factors precise is easier. We'll also ignore some factors of  $\hbar$ .

Consider the function

$$\widehat{\rho}(t, \xi) := \langle e^{ix \cdot \xi} \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \int \underbrace{|\psi(t, x)|^2}_{\rho(t, x)} e^{-ix \cdot \psi} d\xi,$$

so that  $\rho(t, x)$  is a probability distribution in  $x$  for a given  $t$ . The *momentum operator*  $P = i\nabla_x$ , on the other hand, satisfies

$$\langle P \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \int |\widehat{\psi}(t, \xi)| \xi d\xi,$$

and hence defines another natural probability density  $\mu(t, \xi)$  via

$$\langle e^{-iP\eta} \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \int \underbrace{|\widehat{\psi}(t, \xi)|^2}_{\mu(t, \xi)} e^{-i\xi \cdot \eta} d\xi = \widehat{\mu}(t, \eta).$$

The two probability distributions  $\widehat{\rho}$  and  $\mu$  ought to be related, but they're not Fourier transforms from each other. Maybe in quantum mechanics, it doesn't make sense to separate the densities in  $x$  (position) and  $\xi$  (momentum), and to instead consider a probability density on the entirety of phase space of a solution  $\psi$  to (4.1). In particular, let

$$\widehat{W}(t, \xi, \eta) := \left\langle e^{-i(x \cdot \xi + P \cdot \eta)} \right\rangle_{\psi(t)}.$$

Here  $x$  and  $P$  do not commute. Accordingly, the *Wigner transform* of  $\psi$  is

$$(4.8) \quad W(t, x, v) := (\widehat{W})^\vee(t, x, v).$$

In the semiclassical limit, as  $\hbar \rightarrow 0$ , this will converge to the Liouville equation as in classical mechanics.

*Remark.* For a general solution  $\psi$  of the Schrödinger equation, its Wigner transform is not positive definite, and hence doesn't define a probability density. However, we can make it positive definite: if

$$G(x, v) = e^{-c_1 x^2 - c_2 v^2}$$

is a Gaussian, then the convolution

$$H(t, x, v) := (W * G)(t, x, v)$$

is positive definite, and, suitably normalized, it defines a probability density function. The function  $H$  is called a *Husini function*, and is very useful in applied math, specifically in the study of wave equations.  $\blacktriangleleft$

The definition (4.8) is great for telling us what and why the Wigner transform is, but not so much how to calculate anything with it. Fortunately, there's an explicit formula.

**Lemma 4.9.**

$$W(t, x, v) = \int \overline{\psi(t, x - y/2)} \psi(t, x + y/2) e^{iy \cdot v} dy.$$

This can be simplified using the density matrix  $\Gamma_{xx'} := \overline{\psi(x)} \psi(x')$ . So the Wigner transform is the Fourier transform of a density matrix.

*Proof.* The proof is not fascinating, but will be good practice for a useful technique.

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be linear operators for which  $e^A$  and  $e^B$  are well-defined, and assume  $[A, B] := AB - BA$  is a scalar multiple of the identity. Then the higher commutators all vanish:  $[A, [A, B]] = [[A, B], B] = 0$ . Hence, the *Baker-Campbell-Hausdorff* formula for  $e^{A+B}$  simplifies greatly to

$$(4.10) \quad e^{A+B} = e^A e^B e^{-[A, B]/2}.$$

We're specifically interested in  $x_i$  and  $P_j$ , and  $[x_i, P_j] = -i\delta_{ij}$ , so we may use (4.10):

$$e^{-i(x \cdot \xi + P \cdot \eta)} = e^{-ix \cdot \xi} e^{-iP \cdot \eta} e^{-\xi \cdot \eta/2}.$$

Next, observe that  $e^{-iP \cdot \eta}$  acts through a translation by  $\eta$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (e^{-iP \cdot \eta} f)(x) &= e^{\eta \cdot \nabla} \int \widehat{f}(\xi) e^{i\xi \cdot x} d\xi \\ &= \int \widehat{f}(\xi) e^{i(x+\eta) \cdot \xi} d\xi \\ &= f(x + \eta). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\widehat{W}(t, \xi, \eta) = \int e^{-ix\xi} e^{-(i/2)\xi \cdot \eta} \overline{\psi(t, x)} \psi(t, x + \eta) dx.$$

If you compute the inverse Fourier transform, which is mechanical, you'll get the desired formula.  $\square$

**Convergence to the classical Liouville equation.** Taking a semiclassical limit means sending  $\hbar$  to 0, more or less. Of course, this makes no sense:  $\hbar$  is a nonzero physical constant! But it represents the idea that, relative to the scale of  $\hbar$ , everything is very large. Also, we'll call it  $\varepsilon$  instead of  $\hbar$ , which makes it better.

Our Schrödinger equation is, given a potential  $V \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

$$i\varepsilon \partial_t \psi^\varepsilon = -\frac{\varepsilon^2}{2} \Delta \psi^\varepsilon + V \psi^\varepsilon.$$

Now, the rescaled Wigner transform is

$$W^\varepsilon(t, x, p) = \frac{1}{\varepsilon^n} \int \overline{\psi^\varepsilon(t, x - y/2)} \psi^\varepsilon(t, x + y/2) e^{iy \cdot p} dy.$$

Scaling  $y \rightarrow \varepsilon y$ , this is

$$(4.11) \quad = \int \overline{\psi^\varepsilon(t, x - \varepsilon y/2)} \psi^\varepsilon(t, x + \varepsilon y/2) e^{iy \cdot p} dy.$$



**Exercise 4.12.** Show that  $\partial_t W^\varepsilon(t, x, p)$  is the sum of a *kinetic term* (I) and a *potential term* (II) where

$$(4.13a) \quad (I) = -p \cdot \nabla_x W^\varepsilon(t, x, p)$$

$$(4.13b) \quad (II) = (\text{didn't get this in time})$$

The Wigner transform has the property that it turns a Schrödinger-like equation into a transport equation, and vice versa.

Lecture 5.

### The semiclassical limit of the Schrödinger equation: 9/14/17

*"Evaluating an object like (5.11) looks like it can be damaging to one's health. But it can be done"*

We've been working on the Schrödinger equation

$$\begin{aligned} i\varepsilon \partial_t \psi^\varepsilon(t, x) &= -\frac{\varepsilon^2}{2} \Delta \psi^\varepsilon(t, x) + V(x) \psi^\varepsilon(t, x) \\ \psi^\varepsilon(t=0) &= \psi_0^\varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $V \in C^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$ , and  $\varepsilon = \hbar$ , because it seems much more reasonable to say  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  rather than  $\hbar \rightarrow 0$  (since  $\hbar$  is a physical constant, not a variable!), as we will do when considering its semiclassical limit.<sup>3</sup>

To compute this, we introduced the rescaled Wigner transform Equation (4.11).

**Theorem 5.1.** As  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ ,  $W^\varepsilon \rightarrow F$ , where

$$(\partial_t + p \cdot \nabla_x) F(t, x, p) = (\nabla V)(x) \cdot \nabla_p F(t, x, p).$$

*Proof.* As in Exercise 4.12, we want to write  $\partial_t W^\varepsilon(t, x, p)$  as a sum of a kinetic term (I) (4.13a) and a potential term (II) (4.13b). In more detail, if

$$\begin{aligned} (I) &= \frac{i\varepsilon}{2} \int \left( \overline{\psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \Delta \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) - \overline{\Delta \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right) e^{ipy} dy \\ &= i \int \nabla_x \cdot \nabla_y \left( \overline{\psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right) e^{ipy} dy. \end{aligned}$$

Then, the cross terms cancel, which is how you get (4.13a).<sup>4</sup>

The other term is

$$(II) = -\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \int \left( V\left(x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) - V\left(x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right) \overline{\psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) e^{ipy} dy.$$

For some  $s_y \in (-1, 1)$ , this is

$$= -\frac{i}{\varepsilon} \int \left( \varepsilon \nabla V(x) \cdot y + \frac{1}{2} D^2 V\left(x + s_y \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) (\varepsilon y, \varepsilon y) \right) \overline{\psi^\varepsilon(\dots)} \psi^\varepsilon(\dots) e^{ipy} dy.$$

Splitting this along the red + sign, call the first part  $(II_1)$  and the second  $(II_2)$ . The first term is what we want, and the second is an error term.

$$\begin{aligned} (II_1) &= -i \int \nabla V(x) \cdot \frac{1}{i} \nabla_p \overline{\psi^\varepsilon\left(x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \psi^\varepsilon\left(x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) e^{ipy} dy \\ &= \nabla V(x) \cdot \nabla_p W^\varepsilon(t, x, p). \end{aligned}$$

We'd like the error term to go away, but because  $y$  is unbounded (this integral is over  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ) we need to make some assumptions. Let's assume  $\text{supp}(V) \subset B_R(0)$  is bounded. Then,

$$\left| x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2} \right| < R,$$

so

$$|y| \leq \frac{2}{\varepsilon} (R + |x|).$$

This is not strong enough: it's asymptotic to  $1/\varepsilon$ , which does not go away (rather the opposite, in fact).

<sup>3</sup>For this reason,  $\varepsilon$  is sometimes known as a *semiclassical parameter*.

<sup>4</sup>**TODO:** I think... I didn't get this written down in time.

Instead, we'll have to show that  $(II_2)$  converges *weakly* to 0, even when  $V$  isn't compactly supported. Let  $J(x, p) \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n)$  be a test function (Schwartz class), and recall that the Fourier transform sends Schwartz-class functions to Schwartz-class ones. This implies that for all  $m, n, r$ , and  $s$ ,

$$\|x^m \nabla_x^n p^r \nabla_p^s J\|_{L^\infty} < C_{m,n,r,s}.$$

For any such  $J$ , its Fourier transform, also Schwartz class, satisfies

$$(5.2) \quad |\hat{J}(x, y)| \leq \frac{f(x)}{(R^2 + y^2)^{m/2}}$$

for some  $R$ , where  $f(x) \rightarrow 0$  rapidly as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ . Hence, when we integrate,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int J(x, p) D^2 V(\varepsilon y, \varepsilon y) \overline{\psi^\varepsilon(\cdots)} \psi^\varepsilon(\cdots) e^{ip y} dy dx dp \\ = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int \hat{J}(x, y) D^2 V(\varepsilon y, \varepsilon y) \overline{\psi^\varepsilon(\cdots)} \psi^\varepsilon(\cdots) dy dx. \end{aligned}$$

Using (5.2),

$$|(\text{above})| \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int |f(x)| \|D^2 V\|_{L^\infty} |\varepsilon y|^2 \frac{1}{(R^2 + y^2)^m} \left| \overline{\psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right)} \right| \left| \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right| dx dy.$$

Since  $V$  is  $C^2$ ,  $\|f\| \cdot \|D^2 V\|_{\text{matrix}} \|L^\infty$  is bounded by some constant  $C$ . Here we need to assume  $D^2 V$  grows at most polynomially in  $|x|$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$  and that  $f$  is Schwartz. Then,

$$\leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \int \frac{1}{(R + y^2)^{n/2+1}} dy \left( \int \left| \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x - \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right|^2 dx \right)^{1/2} \left( \int \left| \psi^\varepsilon\left(t, x + \frac{\varepsilon y}{2}\right) \right|^2 dx \right)^{1/2}.$$

Each of the  $L^2$  terms is  $O(\varepsilon)$ , and therefore the whole thing goes as  $\varepsilon^2/\varepsilon$ , hence  $O(\varepsilon)$ , which goes to 0 as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ .  $\square$

Hence the semiclassical limit of the Schrödinger equation is the Liouville equation, as promised. We're lucky in a sense, because the semiclassical limit came purely by rescaling; in general, one has to be more clever.

**Derivation of the principle of least action from the path integral.** There's another way to pass from quantum to classical without doing anything so strange as letting  $\hbar \rightarrow 0$  (so in particular, we can call it  $\hbar$  again).

First, let's simplify by removing the  $V\psi$  term, obtaining the *free Schrödinger equation*

$$H_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2} \Delta,$$

whose solution with  $\psi(t=0) = \psi_0$  is

$$(5.3) \quad \begin{aligned} \psi(t, x) &= \left( e^{-itH_0/\hbar} \psi_0 \right)(x) \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t} \right)^{d/2} \int e^{-i|x-q_0|^2/(2\hbar t)} \psi_0(q_0) dq_0. \end{aligned}$$

If it weren't for the  $i$  in the exponent, this would look like a Gaussian. To solve it, we're going to discretize time  $[0, t]$  into  $N$  intervals of width  $\Delta t := t/N$ . Let  $t_j := j \cdot \Delta t$  and  $q_j$  be the variable corresponding to  $t_j$ .

$$(5.4) \quad = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar \Delta t} \right)^{dN/2} \int \prod_{j=0}^{N-1} e^{-i|q_{j+1}-q_j|^2/(2\hbar \Delta t)} \Bigg|_{q_N=x} \psi_0(q_0) \prod_{j=0}^{N-1} dq_j.$$

Thus, if you let  $\mathbf{q}_N := (q_0, \dots, q_N)$  and

$$\mathcal{D}\mathbf{q}_N := \left( \frac{1}{\pi i \hbar \Delta t} \right)^{dN/2} \prod_{j=1}^{N-1} dq_j,$$

which is a complex-valued measure, then (5.4) simplifies to

$$(5.5) \quad \int \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar} S_{0,N}(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x)\right) \psi_0(q_0) \mathcal{D}\mathbf{q}_N.$$

Here  $S_{0,N}$  is the discretization of the action:

$$(5.6) \quad S_{0,N} := \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left( \frac{q_{j+1} - q_j}{\Delta t} \right)^2 \Delta t.$$

As  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ , this converges to  $(1/2) \int_0^t (\dot{q}(s))^2 ds$ , and (5.5) resembles more and more the integral of  $e^{iS/\hbar}$  over all paths connecting  $q_0$  to  $x$ , integrated against  $\psi(q_0)$  with respect to  $q_0$ . This is an example of a *path integral* (after all, it's an integral over paths).

For the full Schrödinger equation, with  $V \neq 0$ , the idea is the same, just with more variables per line. Again subdivide

$$[0, t] = \bigcup_{j=0}^{N_1} [t_j, t_{j+1}],$$

and discretize the classical action, like in (5.6) but with a potential.

$$(5.7) \quad S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x) := \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left( \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{q_{j+1} - q_j}{\Delta t} \right)^2 + V(q_j) \right) \Delta t.$$

Then, define

$$(5.8) \quad \Psi_N(t, x) := \int e^{-iS_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x)/\hbar} \underbrace{\left[ \frac{\det(\partial_t^2)}{\det(\partial_t^2 + D^2 V)} \right]}_{(*)} \psi_0(q_0) \mathcal{D}\mathbf{q}_N.$$

The quantity in (\*) is called the *Van Vleck-Pauli-Morette determinant*, which is the correction to (5.5) dictated by the potential.

**Theorem 5.9.** *If  $\Psi(t, x) := \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \Psi_N(t, x)$ , then  $\psi$  is a strong  $L^2$  solution to the Schrödinger equation with  $\Psi(t=0) = \Psi_0$ .*

*Partial proof.* Here s-lim denotes a strong limit. If  $A$  and  $B$  are two matrices which do not necessarily commute, Trotter's product formula establishes that

$$(5.10) \quad e^{A+B} = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left( e^{(1/N)A} e^{(1/N)B} \right)^N.$$

In particular,  $H_0$  and  $V$  don't necessarily commute, so if  $\Delta t := t/N$ ,

$$\exp\left(-it \frac{H_0 + V}{\hbar}\right) = \text{s-lim}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left( \exp -i \frac{\Delta t H_0}{\hbar} \exp\left(-i \frac{\Delta t V}{\hbar}\right) \right)^N.$$

Implicit in this composition of operators is a kernel transform.<sup>5</sup> Therefore

$$(5.11) \quad e^{-it \frac{H_0 + V}{\hbar}}(x, q_0) = \text{s-lim}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \int \left( e^{-i\Delta t H_0/\hbar} \right)(x, q_{N-1}) e^{-i\Delta t V(q_{N-1})/\hbar} \left( e^{-i\Delta t H_0/\hbar} \right)(q_{N-1}, q_{N-2}) \cdots e^{-i\Delta t V(q_0)/\hbar} dq_1 \cdots dq_{N-1}.$$

If you insert

$$\left( e^{-i\Delta t H_0/\hbar} \right)(q_{j+1}, q_j) = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar \Delta t} \right)^{d/2} e^{-i|q_{j+1} - q_j|^2 / (2\hbar \Delta t)},$$

you get the desired expression for  $\Psi_N$  in (5.8), except for the VV-P-M determinant. Now we need to actually evaluate (5.11), which is a very oscillatory integral on a high-dimensional space. Fortunately, we can use a trick from harmonic analysis called the stationary phase formula to assist us.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup>TODO: what is this explicitly referring to?

<sup>6</sup>For those of you who like topology and geometry, there's a geometric reformulation of this which is related to the Duistermaat-Heckman formula in symplectic geometry.

**Theorem 5.12.** Assume  $\Phi$  and  $f$  are  $C^2$  functions on  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and let  $y^*$  denote the unique solution to  $\Delta\Phi(y) = 0$ . Assume  $D^2\Phi(y^*)$  is nondegenerate; then

$$\int e^{-i\lambda\Phi(y)} f(y) dy = \left(\frac{2\pi i}{\lambda}\right)^{d/2} |\det D^2\Phi(y^*)|^{-1/2} e^{-i\pi \operatorname{sign}(D^2\Phi(y^*))/4} e^{-i\lambda\Phi(y^*)} f(y^*) + o\left(\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^{d/2}\right)$$

as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ .

The cool idea is, since

$$e^{i\lambda cy} = \frac{1}{i\lambda c} \partial_y e^{icy},$$

you can use the regularity of  $f$  to trade for factors of  $1/\lambda$ : the more regular  $f$  is, the stronger convergence you can obtain.

Lecture 6.

### The stationary phase approximation: 9/19/17

To recap, we wanted to solve the Schrödinger equation, and in order to do so took a kind of path integral: we discretized the action (5.7) and integrated over all (piecewise-linear) possible paths (5.8) between  $q_0$  and  $q_N = x$ , the point where we wanted to evaluate the answer. These discretized paths are approximations  $\mathbf{q}_N^*$  to the classical paths which solve the Euler-Lagrange equations, and one has that

$$(6.1) \quad \Psi_N(t, x) = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t}\right)^{d/2} \int \exp\left(\frac{-iS_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x)}{\hbar}\right) \left[\frac{\det(\partial_t^2)}{\det(\partial_t^2 + D^2V)}\right] \psi_0(q_0) dq_0.$$

We then used Trotter's product formula (5.10) to prove that this converges to solutions  $\psi(t)$  strongly (Theorem 5.9).

To prove (6.1), we have to use the *stationary phase formula*: that for  $\lambda \gg 1$ ,

$$(6.2) \quad \int e^{i\lambda\Phi(x)} f(x) dx = \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \lambda}\right)^{d/2} e^{i\lambda\Phi(x^*)} e^{i\pi \operatorname{sign}(D^2\Phi(x^*))/4} \left(\frac{1}{\det D^2\Phi(x^*)}\right)^{1/2} f(x^*) + o\left(\left(\frac{1}{\lambda}\right)^{d/2}\right),$$

where  $x^*$  is the *stationary point*, i.e. the point where  $\nabla\Phi(x^*) = 0$ .

To use (6.2), we need to find the stationary point  $\mathbf{q}_N^*$  of  $S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x)$ , which must satisfy

$$(6.3) \quad \nabla_{\mathbf{q}_N^*}(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) = 0.$$

The Hessian is

$$D^2S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x) = \frac{1}{\Delta t} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 2\mathbf{1}_d & -\mathbf{1}_d & & & \\ -\mathbf{1}_d & 2\mathbf{1}_d & -\mathbf{1}_d & & \\ & -\mathbf{1}_d & \ddots & & \\ & & & \ddots & -\mathbf{1}_d \\ & & & -\mathbf{1}_d & 2\mathbf{1}_d \end{pmatrix}}_{M_{N,d}} + D_{\mathbf{q}}^2V(\mathbf{q}_N^*)\Delta t.$$

Now, (6.3) is equivalent to the equation

$$\frac{-q_{j+1}^* + 2q_j^* - q_{j-1}^*}{(\Delta t)^2} = -(\nabla_{q_j}V)(q_j^*)$$

for  $j = 1, \dots, N-1$ , and this is precisely a discretization of the Newton equations

$$\ddot{q} = -\nabla V(q).$$

*Remark.*  $1/(\Delta t)^2 M_{N,d}$  is a discretization of  $\partial^2$ .

◀

From the stationary phase equation,

$$\Psi_N(t, x) = \int K_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) \psi_0(q_0) dq_0 + \text{lower-order terms},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} K_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) &= \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar \Delta t} \right)^{Nd/2} (2\pi i \hbar)^{Nd/2} \left| \det \left( D_{\mathbf{q}_N}^2 S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) \right) \right|^{-1/2} \exp \left( \frac{i S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x)}{\hbar} \right) \\ &= \left| \det \left( \Delta t D_q^2 S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) \right) \right|^{-1/2} \exp \left( \frac{i S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x)}{\hbar} \right) \\ (6.4) \quad &= \left| \det \left( M_{N,d} + D_q^2 V(\mathbf{q}_N^*)(\Delta t)^2 \right) \right|^{-1/2} \exp \left( \frac{i S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x)}{\hbar} \right), \end{aligned}$$

and we know what the Hessian is. We'll use a strange-looking trick to simplify this next: observe that

$$\left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar} \right)^{d/2} = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t} \right)^{d/2} \exp \left( -\frac{i|x-x|}{2\hbar t} \right),$$

which can be interpreted as a free propagator of  $x$  with itself. This can be expressed as an action

$$= |\det(M_{N,d})|^{-1/2} \exp \left( \frac{i}{\hbar} S_{0,N}(t, x, x, \dots, x) \right).$$

Plugging the ratio of these terms back into (6.4),

$$K_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x) = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t} \right)^{d/2} \int \left| \frac{\det((1/(\Delta t)^2) M_{N,d})}{\det((1/(\Delta t)^2) M_{N,d} + D^2 V)} \right| \exp \left( \frac{i S_N(t, \mathbf{q}_N^*, x)}{\hbar} \right).$$

This ratio of determinants is important — it's the discretization of the VV-P-M determinant that we alluded to last time.

**Ehrenfest theorem.** The Ehrenfest theorem is another link between the quantum and classical worlds.

**Theorem 6.5.** Let  $A(t)$  be a linear operator on  $L^2$  and assume  $\psi(t)$  is an  $L^2$  solution of the Schrödinger equation, i.e.

$$i\hbar \partial_t \psi = H\psi$$

and  $\psi(t=0) = \psi_0$  for some specified  $\psi_0$ . Then,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle A(t) \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \langle [H, A] \rangle_{\psi(t)} + \langle \partial_t A \rangle_{\psi(t)}.$$

(Recall that  $\langle A \rangle_{\psi} = \langle \psi, A\psi \rangle$ .) One special case of interest: let  $A = x$  be a position variable. Then,

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle x \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \langle [H, x] \rangle_{\psi(t)},$$

and

$$[H, X] = \left[ -\frac{\hbar^2}{2} \Delta + V, x \right].$$

If you calculate it out, this commutator is the gradient, so

$$[H, x]f = -\hbar^2 \nabla f = -i\hbar Pf,$$

where  $P := -i\hbar \nabla$  is the momentum operator.

If on the other hand you apply Theorem 6.5 to  $P$ , you get that

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle P \rangle_{\psi(t)} = \frac{1}{i\hbar} \langle [H, P] \rangle_{\psi(t)},$$

and in a similar manner,

$$[H, P]f = [V, P]f = -i\hbar (\nabla V) \cdot f.$$

Thus

$$\frac{d}{dt} \langle P \rangle_{\psi(t)} = -\langle \nabla V \rangle_{\psi(t)}.$$

What this means is that the classical Hamiltonian equations hold, in the operator sense, in expectation, with respect to  $\psi(t)$ .

**Spectral theory.** We're going to spend the next several lectures on spectral theory. We've done some before in the prelim classes, but the operators that arise in quantum physics are not always compact, and so we'll need a more advanced theory.

**Definition 6.6.** Let  $A$  be a linear operator (possibly unbounded) on a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ . Its *spectrum*  $\sigma(A)$  is the set of  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  such that  $A - \lambda$  is noninvertible.<sup>7</sup> The *resolvent*  $\rho(A) := \mathbb{C} \setminus \sigma(A)$ .

The spectrum further subdivides into three types.

- The *point spectrum*  $\sigma_p(A)$  is the subset of  $\sigma(A)$  where  $A - \lambda$  is not injective.
- The *continuous spectrum*  $\sigma_c(A)$  is the subset of  $\sigma(A)$  where  $A - \lambda$  is injective, and the range of  $A - \lambda$  is dense, but  $(A - \lambda)^{-1}$  is not bounded.
- The *residual spectrum* is the subset of  $\sigma(A)$  where the range of  $A - \lambda$  is not dense.

**Theorem 6.7.** These are all the spectral types:  $\sigma(A) = \sigma_p(A) \cup \sigma_c(A) \cup \sigma_r(A)$ . Moreover, if  $A$  is self-adjoint,  $\sigma_r(A) = \emptyset$  and  $\sigma(A) \subset \mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 6.8.** Assume  $(A - \lambda)\psi = 0$  has a nonzero solution  $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$ . Then,  $\lambda$  is called an *eigenvalue* and  $\psi$  an *eigenvector*.

There are also cases that are "almost as good."

**Definition 6.9.** The sequence  $\{\psi_n\} \in \mathcal{H}$  is called a *Weyl sequence* for  $A$  and  $\lambda$  if

- (1)  $\|\psi_n\|_{\mathcal{H}} = 1$ ,
- (2)  $\|(A - \lambda)\psi_n\|_{\mathcal{H}}$  goes to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , and
- (3)  $\psi_n \rightharpoonup 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

The last condition means that  $\psi_n$  converges weakly to 0, i.e.  $(\phi, \psi_n) \rightarrow 0$  for all  $\phi \in \mathcal{H}$ .

Let  $\sigma_d(A)$  denote the *discrete spectrum* of  $A$ , i.e. the set of isolated eigenvalues of  $A$  with finite multiplicity.

We won't prove these theorems, but a proof will be posted (either on Canvas or the course website).

**Theorem 6.10** (Weyl criterion).  $\sigma_c(A)$  is the set of  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  for which there exists a Weyl sequence.

**Theorem 6.11.** If  $U: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$  is unitary, then  $\sigma(U^*AU) = \sigma(A)$ .<sup>8</sup>

*Proof.* This follows because  $U^*AU - \lambda = U^*(A - \lambda)U$ , which is true because  $U^*U = \mathbf{1}$ , and the fact that  $U$  is an isometric isomorphism, hence preserves injectivity, surjectivity, and density.  $\square$

Different authors use different conventions/definitions for these things, so be careful.

Lecture 7.

## Spectral theory: 9/21/17

"Let me write this down in the hope that the errors today are new errors, not old ones."

We started with a correction of a derivation from the last lecture. I don't know where it fits in the notes, unfortunately.

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t}\right)^{d/2} &= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar t}\right)^{d/2} \exp\left(-\frac{i|x-x|^2}{2\hbar t}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar \Delta t}\right)^{dN/2} \int \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar} S_{0,N}(t, \mathbf{q}_N, x)\right) d\mathbf{q}_N. \end{aligned}$$

$d\mathbf{q}_N$  is a product of  $N - 1$  integrands  $dq_j$ , rather than  $N$  integrands.

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2\pi i \hbar \Delta t}\right)^{dN/2} (2\pi i \hbar)^{\frac{d(N-1)}{2}} \left| \det\left(\frac{1}{\Delta t}\right) M_{d,N} \right|^{-1/2},$$

<sup>7</sup>That is, if  $\lambda \notin \sigma(A)$ ,  $A - \lambda$  has not just an inverse, but a bounded inverse.

<sup>8</sup>**TODO:** this is also true for  $\sigma_p$ ,  $\sigma_c$ , and  $\sigma_r$ , right?

and again,  $M_{d,N}$  is an  $(N-1) \times (N-1)$ -matrix.

$$= \left( \frac{N}{2\pi i \hbar t} \right)^{d/2} |\det M_{d,N}|^{-1/2}.$$

As the determinant of the  $(N-1) \times (N-1)$ -matrix

$$A_{N-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & & & \\ -1 & 2 & & & \\ & & \ddots & & \\ & & & 2 & -1 \\ & & & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is  $N$ , the determinant of  $M_{d,N} = A_{N-1} \otimes \mathbf{1}_d$  is  $N^d$ . The good news is, in the limit the answer is the same. (There was also a correction in the spectral theory part of the notes, which has already been incorporated.)

### Example 7.1.

- (1) Let  $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  and for a monotone continuous function  $g: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  with range  $[-M, M]$ , let  $A_g$  be the operator sending  $f$  to  $A_g f(x) = g(x)f(x)$ . Then,  $\sigma(A_g) = [-m, M]$ .  
 If  $\lambda \notin \text{Im}(g)$ , then  $(A_g - \lambda)^{-1} = 1/(g(x) - \lambda)$  is bounded.  
 Now assume  $\lambda \in \text{Im}(g)$ ; since  $g$  is monotone,  $g^{-1}(\lambda)$  is either a point or an interval.
  - Suppose  $|g^{-1}(\lambda)| = 0$ . Then,  $A_g - \lambda$  is injective, because  $((A_g - \lambda)f)(x) = 0$  iff  $(g(x) - \lambda)f(x) = 0$  implies  $f = 0$  almost everywhere, so  $\lambda \in \sigma_c(A_g)$ .
  - Suppose  $|g^{-1}(\lambda)| > 0$ . Then, there functions  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$  not almost everywhere zero with  $((A_g - \lambda)f)(x) = 0$ , so  $\lambda \in \sigma_p(A_g)$ .
- (2) Let  $A$  be multiplication by  $x$  acting on  $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ . Then,  $\sigma(A) = \sigma_c(A) = \mathbb{R}$ , essentially by the previous example. This is the spectrum of a position operator in quantum mechanics.
- (3) Let  $P = -i\nabla$ , which is the momentum operator, again in  $d = 1$ . If  $U$  denotes the Fourier transform, then  $U^*PU = \xi$ , so once again  $\sigma(P) = \sigma_c(P) = \mathbb{R}$ .
- (4) Suppose  $A\psi = -\Delta\psi$ . Then,  $U^*(-\Delta)U = \xi^2$ , so we can just look at the spectrum of that, which is entirely the continuous spectrum, which is  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , so  $\sigma(-\Delta) = \sigma_c(-\Delta) = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ .
- (5) If  $A = -\Delta$  and  $d > 1$ , then

$$U^*(-\Delta)U = \sum_{j=1}^d \xi_j^2,$$

which has the same range, and therefore it's still true that  $\sigma(-\Delta) = \sigma_d(-\Delta) = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . ◀

**Theorem 7.2.** Suppose  $H = -\Delta + V$  on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , where  $V$  is a continuous function such that  $V(x) \rightarrow 0$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ . Then,  $\sigma_{\text{ess}}(H) = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ .

This is tricky, because these operators do not commute. The proof is a nice application of a variant of Weyl sequences.

**Definition 7.3.** Let  $A$  be a linear operator on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . A *spreading sequence* for  $A$  and  $\lambda$  is a sequence  $\{\psi_n\}$  such that

- $\|\psi_n\| = 1$ ,
- for any bounded  $B \subset \mathbb{R}^d$ , there's an  $N_B$  such that  $\text{supp}(\psi_n) \cap B = \emptyset$  for  $n > N_B$ , and
- $\|(A - \lambda)\psi_n\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Proposition 7.4.** A spreading sequence for  $A, \lambda$  is also a Weyl sequence.

*Proof of Theorem 7.2.* Consider the sequence

$$\psi_n(x) := e^{i\sqrt{\lambda}x} \frac{1}{n^{d/2}} \phi\left(\frac{|x - 2n \text{sign}(x)|}{n}\right),$$

where  $\phi$  is a bump function with total integral 1 and supported on  $(-1, 1)$ . We're going to show this is a spreading sequence for  $H$  when  $\lambda \geq 0$ .

We have

$$|x - 2n \operatorname{sign}(x)| \leq n \iff n \leq |x| \leq 3n,$$

and therefore the support of  $\psi_n$  is unbounded as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . It's also quick to check that  $\|\psi_n\|^2 = 1$ . Finally, let's compute

$$(7.5) \quad \|(H - \lambda)\psi_n\| \leq \underbrace{\|(-\Delta - \lambda)\psi_n\|_{L^2}}_{(I)} + \underbrace{\|V\psi_n\|_{L^2}}_{(II)}.$$

Since the Fourier transform is norm-preserving,

$$(I) = \|(\tilde{\zeta}^2 - \lambda)\hat{\psi}_n\|,$$

and

$$\hat{\psi}_n(\tilde{\zeta}) = e^{2in|\tilde{\zeta}|} \underbrace{n^{d/2} \hat{\phi}\left(n\left(|\tilde{\zeta}| - \lambda^{1/2}\right)\right)}_{\chi_n(\tilde{\zeta})}.$$

$|\chi_n|^2$  is concentrated around  $|\tilde{\zeta}| - \lambda^{1/2}$ , and in fact converges weakly to a  $\delta$ -function supported there, which means that for any test function  $g$ , as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\int g(|\tilde{\zeta}|) \chi_n^2(|\tilde{\zeta}|) d|\tilde{\zeta}| \longrightarrow g(\lambda^{1/2}).$$

Therefore, assuming  $\lambda$  is in the image of  $\tilde{\zeta}^2$ ,

$$\int (\tilde{\zeta}^2 - \lambda^2) |\chi_n(\tilde{\zeta})|^2 d\tilde{\zeta} \longrightarrow 0.$$

The other piece of (7.5) also goes to 0:

$$(7.6) \quad \begin{aligned} (II)^2 &= \|V\psi_n\|^2 \\ &= \int V(x)^2 |\psi_n(x)|^2 dx \\ &\leq \sup_{|x| \in [n, 3n]} |V(x)|^2 \int |\psi_n|^2, \end{aligned}$$

and we know  $\|\psi_n\| = 1$  and  $V(x) \rightarrow 0$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ , so (7.6) does go to 0 as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , and therefore for  $\lambda \geq 0$ ,  $\{\psi_n\}$  is a spreading sequence, hence a Weyl sequence by Proposition 7.4, and by Theorem 6.10, we're done.  $\square$

Lecture 8.

## The spectral theory of Schrödinger operators: 9/26/17

Note: I came in 20 minutes late and may have missed some material.

References: Reed-Simon, Hislop-Sigal, Yoshida, Kato.

**Definition 8.1.**  $T$  is *essentially self-adjoint* on  $\mathcal{H}$  if its closure is self-adjoint.

**Theorem 8.2.** Let  $T$  be a symmetric operator on  $\mathcal{H}$ . Then, the following are equivalent:

- (1)  $T$  is essentially self-adjoint on  $\mathcal{H}$ .
- (2)  $\ker(T^* \pm i) = \{0\}$ .
- (3)  $\operatorname{Im}(T \pm i)$  is dense in  $\mathcal{H}$ .

Now we'll talk about the spectral theorem.

For motivation, consider an  $n \times n$  matrix with complex entries. It has  $n$  eigenvalues  $\sigma(A) = \{\lambda_j\}$ , and assume that it has  $n$  linearly independent eigenvectors  $v_j$ , so that it may be diagonalized: let  $T = (v_1 \dots v_n)$  and

$$\Lambda = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}.$$



Then,

$$A = T^{-1} \Lambda T = \sum \lambda_j P_j,$$

where if  $E_j$  is the matrix with a 1 in position  $(j, j)$  and 0 elsewhere,  $P_j := T^{-1} E_j T$ .

The operator norm  $\|A\|_{\text{op}}$  is defined to be the supremum of the set of eigenvalues of  $A$ . If  $A = A^*$  (i.e. it's Hermitian), then  $T^{-1} = T^*$ , i.e. it's unitary.

Now suppose  $f$  is a function with a convergent power series expansion  $f = \sum a_n x^n$ . For a matrix  $A$  we can write

$$\begin{aligned} f(A) &= \sum a_n A^n \\ &= T^{-1} \left( \sum a_n \Lambda^n \right) T \\ &= T^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} f(\lambda_1) & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & f(\lambda_n) \end{pmatrix} T \\ &= \sum_j f(\lambda_j) P_j. \end{aligned}$$

If  $\Gamma$  is a contour enclosing  $\sigma(A)$ , we can also write this as

$$f(A) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \sum_j \oint_{\Gamma} dz \frac{f(z)}{\lambda_j - z} P_j,$$

or, if  $f$  is analytic,

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\Gamma} dz \frac{f(z)}{A - z}.$$

Now we generalize to infinite-dimensional Hilbert spaces.

**Theorem 8.3** (Spectral theorem for bounded Hermitian operators). *Let  $A$  be a bounded Hermitian operator on a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ ,  $\Omega$  be a complex domain containing  $\sigma(A)$ , and  $f: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be analytic in  $\Omega$ . If  $\Gamma$  is a contour in  $\Omega$  encircling  $\sigma(A)$ , then*

$$f(A) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\Gamma} f(z) (A - z)^{-1} dz.$$

Since  $A = A^*$ ,  $\sigma(A) \subset \mathbb{R}$ ; since  $A$  is bounded, so is its spectrum, and therefore the picture makes sense.

This integral may be understood in the following way: the numbers  $(\psi, f(A)\varphi)$  over all  $\psi, \varphi \in \mathcal{H}$  determine  $f(A)$  uniquely, and

$$(\psi, f(A)\varphi) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\Gamma} f(z) (\psi, (A - z)^{-1} \varphi),$$

and the inner product is analytic in  $z$  in a neighborhood of  $\Gamma$ .

In quantum mechanics, we need to also understand unbounded operators. In this case, the spectrum is real, but may be unbounded, and the idea is to consider the contour that's the boundary of the rectangle  $[-1/\varepsilon, 1/\varepsilon] \times [\varepsilon, \varepsilon]$ , and let  $\varepsilon \searrow 0$ .

**Theorem 8.4** (Spectral theorem for unbounded, Hermitian operators). *Let  $A$  be an unbounded Hermitian operator on  $\mathcal{H}$  and  $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a Borel function.<sup>9</sup> Then,*

$$f(A) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \lim_{\varepsilon \searrow 0} \text{Im} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\lambda) (A - \lambda - i\varepsilon)^{-1} d\lambda.$$

The proof is long and not terribly instructive, so we won't go into it. Instead, we'll focus specifically on Schrödinger operators.

**Theorem 8.5.** *Let  $H = -\Delta + V$ , where  $V: \mathbb{R}^d \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is continuous,  $V \geq 0$ , and  $V(x) \rightarrow \infty$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ . Then,*

- (1)  $H$  is self-adjoint on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,
- (2)  $\sigma(H) = \sigma_d(H)$  is the set  $\{\lambda_j\}$  of eigenvalues, and

<sup>9</sup>This means for every  $I \subset \mathbb{R}$  open,  $f^{-1}(I)$  is a Borel set.

(3)  $\lambda_j \rightarrow \infty$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ .

*Partial proof.* For self-adjointness, see Hislop-Segal. We next show there does not exist a spreading sequence for any  $\lambda$ : assume  $\{\psi_n\}$  is such a sequence; then, for any  $\lambda$  in the essential spectrum,  $(\psi_n, (H - \lambda)\psi_n) \rightarrow 0$ . And this is

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi_n, (H - \lambda)\psi_n) &= (\psi_n, (-\Delta)\psi_n) + (\psi_n, V\psi_n) - \lambda \|\psi_n\|^2 \\ &= \int |\nabla \psi_n|^2 + \int V|\psi_n|^2 - \lambda \|\psi_n\|^2 \\ &\geq \inf_{y \in \text{supp}(\psi_n)} (V(y)) - \lambda, \end{aligned}$$

and this goes to  $\infty$ , since  $\{\psi_n\}$  is a spreading sequence, providing a contradiction.

This means the essential spectrum is empty, so  $\sigma(H) = \sigma_d(H)$ , which is exactly the isolated eigenvalues.

To get at the limit of the eigenvalues, we'll use a variational characterization of the eigenvalues of an operator.

**Theorem 8.6.** Let  $\mathcal{H}_i := \text{span}\{\psi_1, \dots, \psi_i\}$ , where  $\psi_i$  is an eigenvector for the  $i^{\text{th}}$  lowest eigenvalue  $\lambda_i$  (so  $\lambda_1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq \dots$ ). Then,

$$\inf_{\{\psi \in \mathcal{H}_i^\perp \cap D(H) \mid \|\psi\|=1\}} (\psi, H\psi) = \inf\{\sigma(H) \setminus \{\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_i\}\}.$$

This is true because  $H$  is unbounded and its eigenvalues do not accumulate (because there is no essential spectrum). Repeatedly invoking Theorem 8.6, one gets that there's always another eigenvalue  $\lambda_{i+1}$ , and it's at least as big as  $\lambda_i$ , but the eigenvalues cannot accumulate, so they go to  $\infty$ .  $\square$

Not every Schrödinger operator meets the criteria of (8.5), though, including some famous ones.

**Example 8.7** (The hydrogen atom). Consider the Coulomb potential  $V(x) = 1/|x|$  on  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , which goes to 0 as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ , and the Hamiltonian

$$H = -\Delta - \frac{1}{|x|}.$$

Then, the essential spectrum of  $H$  is  $[0, \infty)$ . There are infinitely many eigenvalues below 0, though, and we'll show this by constructing a sequence  $\{u_n\}_{n \geq 1}$  of linearly independent functions with  $(u_n, Hu_n) < 0$  for all  $n$ .

Pick a  $u \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3)$  such that  $\|u\|_{L^2} = 1$  and  $\text{supp } u \subset \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid 1 < |x| < 2\}$ . Then, let

$$u_n := 2^{-3n/2} u(2^{-n}x),$$

for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since  $(u_n, u_m) = \delta_{nm}$ , these are linearly independent. Moreover,  $(u_n, Hu_m) = 0$  when  $n \neq m$ :

$$(u_n, Hu_m) = \int \nabla \overline{u_n} (\nabla u_m) dx + \int V(x) \overline{u_n(x)} u_m(x) dx,$$

but  $u_n$  and  $u_m$  have disjoint domains, so these integrals are both 0. If  $m = n$ , then we get

$$(u_n, Hu_n) = \int |\nabla u_n|^2 - \int \frac{1}{|x|} |u_n|^2 < 0. \quad \blacktriangleleft$$

Lecture 9.

## The Birman-Schwinger principle: 9/28/17

We've been studying the Schrödinger operator

$$H = -\Delta - \frac{1}{|x|},$$

which corresponds to a hydrogen atom, a single electron bound to a nucleus. We're assuming the nucleus is static and its mass is so large as to make the mass of the hydrogen atom negligible. Last time, we saw that the essential spectrum of  $H$  is  $\mathbb{R}_+$ , the eigenvalues are negative numbers, and there are infinitely many distinct eigenvalues. This implies there's an infinite-dimensional linear subspace on which  $H$  is negative.

One might ask, what aspect of this operator leads  $H$  to have infinitely many eigenvalues? For which values of  $\alpha > 0$  does the operator

$$H = -\Delta - \frac{1}{|x|^\alpha}$$

have infinitely many eigenvalues?

Again we consider the function  $u_n(x) := 2^{-3n/2}u(2^{-n}x)$ , where  $u \in C_0^\infty$  and  $\text{supp}(u) \subset \{|x| \mid 1 < |x| < 2\}$ , so that  $\|u_n\|_{L^2} = 1$ .<sup>10</sup> Then,

$$\langle u_n, Hu_m \rangle = C\delta_{n,m},$$

because the support of the derivatives is also disjoint. Thus the kinetic term always vanishes. But the potential term may be nonzero, and is when  $m = n$ : we get

$$\begin{aligned} \langle u_n, Hu_n \rangle &= \int |\nabla u_n|^2 - \int \frac{1}{|x|^\alpha} |u_n|^2 \\ (9.1) \quad &= 2^{-2n} \int |\nabla u|^2 - 2^{-\alpha n} \int \frac{|u|^2}{|x|^\alpha}. \end{aligned}$$

If  $\alpha < 2$ , then for all  $n$  large enough, this is less than 0, because the second term dominates. This implies there are infinitely many eigenvalues. If  $\alpha > 2$ , then (9.1) is positive for all  $n$  sufficiently large. Does this mean we only have finitely many eigenvalues?

Another potential we might consider is  $V(x) = 1/\langle x \rangle^\alpha$  (where  $\langle x \rangle$  is the Japanese bracket). Then,  $V \in L^{3/2}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ . For  $\alpha > 2$ , do we only have finitely many eigenvalues?

The physical intuition comes from spectroscopic experiments: the hydrogen atom is in a state, and if it absorbs light of a certain energy (color), it can jump to a higher-energy state, and if it emits light of a certain energy (color), it falls to a lower-energy state. Every atom has a different potential and hence a different spectrum (of its Hamiltonian and observationally). The essential spectrum represents when the electron has been separated from the atom (ionization).

We'll use something called the *Birman-Schwinger principle* to solve this. Assume  $H = -\Delta + V$ , where  $V < 0$ , so  $U(x) := -V(x) > 0$ . For any  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $(-\Delta + V)\phi = \lambda\phi$  iff  $(-\Delta - \lambda)\phi = U\phi$ , so

$$\phi = (-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}U\phi.$$

Since  $U > 0$  then we can take a square root of it: let  $v := U^{1/2}\phi$ , so  $v = K(\lambda)v$ , where

$$K(\lambda) := U^{1/2}(-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}U^{1/2}.$$

In particular,  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $H$  (for  $\lambda < 0$ ) iff 1 is an eigenvalue of  $K(\lambda)$ . Therefore the number  $n_H$  of  $\lambda < 0$  that are eigenvalues of  $H$  is the same as the number of  $\lambda < 0$  such that 1 is an eigenvalue of  $K(\lambda)$ .

**Proposition 9.2.**  $n_H$  is also equal to the number of  $v < 1$  such that  $v$  is an eigenvalue of  $K(0)$ .

We'll prove this in a series of lemmas.

**Lemma 9.3.** For all  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $\partial_\lambda K(\lambda) > 0$ .

*Proof.* If  $\phi \neq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_\lambda(\phi, K(\lambda)\phi) &= \partial_\lambda \left( U^{1/2}\phi, (-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}U^{1/2}\phi \right) \\ &= \left( U^{1/2}\phi, (-\Delta - \lambda)^{-2}U^{1/2}\phi \right) \\ &= \|(-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}U^{1/2}\phi\|_{L^2}^2 > 0 \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

**Lemma 9.4.** As  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $K(\lambda) \rightarrow 0$ .

This proof is a nice application of a bunch of tools you learned in your functional analysis course.

<sup>10</sup>One might say that the  $u_n$ s are supported in dyadic shells and have mutually disjoint supports.

*Proof.* We'll prove this by calculating the integral kernel of  $K(\lambda)$ , using the integral kernel for  $(-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}$ . First,

$$(9.5) \quad (-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}(x, y) = \frac{1}{2\pi|x-y|} e^{\sqrt{|\lambda|}|x-y|}.$$

The integral kernel is one such that you get a convolution operator after the Fourier and inverse Fourier transforms, and is the infinite-dimensional generalization of matrix multiplication.

$$(9.6) \quad \begin{aligned} ((-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}f)(x) &= \left( (\xi^2 - \lambda)^{-1} \hat{f} \right)^\vee(x) \\ &= \left( ((|\cdot|^2 - \lambda)^{-1})^\vee * f \right)(x), \end{aligned}$$

where inside the absolute value is

$$\int \frac{1}{\xi^2 + |\lambda|} e^{i\xi z} d\xi = C \frac{e^{-\sqrt{|\lambda|}|z|}}{2|z|},$$

where we integrated over the  $\xi$  such that  $|\xi| = \pm i|\lambda|^{1/2}$ . Therefore (9.6) is

$$\int G_\lambda(x, y) f(y) dy,$$

where  $G_\lambda(x, y)$  is the Green's function, which in this case is either side of (9.5).

*Remark.* There are two norms one can put on a kernel: the usual operator norm and the *Hilbert-Schmidt norm*

$$\|K\|_{\text{HS}} := \left( \int |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy \right)^{1/2}.$$

It turns out this is always at least as big as the operator norm: for any  $f \in L^2$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \|Kf\|_{L^2}^2 &= (Kf, Kf)_{L^2} \\ &= \int dx \left| \int K(x, y) f(y) dy \right|^2. \end{aligned}$$

By Cauchy-Schwarz,

$$\begin{aligned} &\leq \int dx \left( \int |K(x, y)|^2 dy \right) \left( \int |f(y)|^2 dy \right) \\ &= \int |K(x, y)|^2 dx dy \|f\|_{L^2}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\|K\|_{\text{op}} \leq \|K\|_{\text{HS}}$ .

It'll also be useful to recall the definition of the trace of an integral kernel: if  $\{\phi_i\}$  is an orthonormal basis of  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ ,

$$\text{tr } K := \sum (\phi_j, K\phi_j).$$

Basis-independently, this is also

$$\text{tr } K = \int K(x, x) dx. \quad \blacktriangleleft$$

Putting all this together,

$$K(\lambda) = U^{1/2}(x) \frac{1}{2\pi|x-y|} e^{-\sqrt{|\lambda|}|x-y|} U^{1/2}(y),$$

so

$$\|K(\lambda)\|_{\text{op}} \leq \left( \int \frac{U(x)U(y)}{4\pi^2|x-y|^2} e^{-2\sqrt{|\lambda|}|x-y|} dx dy \right)^{1/2},$$

and this tends to 0 as  $\lambda \rightarrow -\infty$ . \(\boxtimes\)

*Proof of Proposition 9.2.* Since  $\|K(\lambda)\| \rightarrow 0$  as  $\lambda \rightarrow -\infty$ , all eigenvalues are less than 1 for  $\lambda$  sufficiently negative. Since  $\partial_\lambda K(\lambda) > 0$  for all  $\lambda < 0$ , then the eigenvalues of  $K(\lambda)$  increase monotonically in  $\lambda$ . The idea is that there's this "eigenvalue flow" such that as  $\lambda$  gets more negative, its eigenvalues get closer to 0.

Let  $v_m(\lambda)$  be the  $m^{\text{th}}$  eigenvalue of  $K(\lambda)$ . Then, if  $v_m(\lambda_m) = 1$  for some  $\lambda_m < 0$ , then  $v_m(0) > 1$ . This means there's a one-to-one correspondence between the eigenvalues  $v_m(0) > 1$  of  $K(0)$  and the points  $\lambda_m$  at which some eigenvalue  $v_m(\lambda)$  crosses 1, which is, as required, the number of  $\lambda < 0$  which have 1 as an eigenvalue of  $K(\lambda)$ .

But then,

$$\begin{aligned} \{\nu > 1 \mid \nu \text{ is an eigenvalue for } K(0)\} &= \sum_{\substack{\nu_m > 1 \\ \text{eigenvalues of } K(0)}} 1 \\ &\leq \sum_{\nu_m > 1} \nu_m^2 \\ &\leq \sum_{\text{eigenvalues of } K(0)} \nu_m^2 \\ &= \text{tr}|K(0)|^2 = \|K(0)\|_{\text{HS}}^2. \end{aligned}$$

This norm is also

$$\frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \frac{U(x)U(y)}{|x-y|^2} dx dy = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} \int \frac{V(x)V(y)}{|x-y|^2} dx dy.$$

The right-hand side is sometimes called the *Rollnick norm* of  $V$ . Then, using the Hardy-Littlewood inequality,

$$(9.7) \quad \leq \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2} C \|V\|_{L^{3/2}}^2.$$

The Hardy-Littlewood inequality here depends on the fact that the dimension is 3, and indeed, eigenvalues of Schrödinger operators behave differently in dimension 2.

But the point is, the number of eigenvalues is finite for  $V \in L^{3/2}$ , and there cannot be any if (9.7) is greater than 1.  $\square$

Lecture 10.

### Lieb-Thirring inequalities: 10/3/17

Last lecture, we used the Birman-Schwinger principle to count eigenvalues of certain Hamiltonians in dimension 3 (specifically, on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ ). If  $H = -\Delta + V$  and  $V$  vanishes at infinity, then the eigenvalues of  $H$  are in bijection with the eigenvalues of

$$K(\lambda) := U^{1/2}(-\Delta - \lambda)^{-1}U^{1/2},$$

i.e.

$$K(\lambda)(x, y) = U^{1/2}(x) \frac{e^{-\sqrt{|\lambda|}}}{2\pi} U^{1/2}(y).$$

This Green's function is why the theory is so nice in dimension 3: in higher dimensions, there are extra terms in powers of  $|x-y|$ , and they make the analysis considerably more complicated.

*Remark.* What if  $V$  isn't positive definite? If  $V = V_+ - V_-$ , where  $V_- \geq 0$ , then  $H \geq \tilde{H} := -\Delta - V_-$ , and by the minimax characterization of eigenvalues, the respective eigenvalues satisfy  $E_j \geq \tilde{E}_j$ . This in particular tells us that it suffices to study  $\tilde{H}$ , and  $V_+$  is often just thrown out.  $\blacktriangleleft$

Using the Birman-Schwinger principle, we obtain that the number of negative eigenvalues of  $H$  is at most  $\|H\|_{\text{HS}}$ , the Hilbert-Schmidt norm. By Hardy-Littlewood-Sobolev, this is bounded by some scalar multiple  $\|U\|_{L^{3/2}(\mathbb{R}^d)}^2$  (where  $U = V_-$ ).

Today, we're going to bound eigenvalues in a different way, using the Lieb-Thirring inequalities. Specifically, let  $E_j < 0$  be the  $j^{\text{th}}$  eigenvalue of  $H = -\Delta + V$ , where  $V = V_+ - V_-$ . Let  $e_j := |E_j|$ ; we want to bound

$$\sum_j e_j^\gamma.$$

**Lemma 10.1.**

$$\sum_j e_j^\gamma = \gamma \int_0^\infty e^{\gamma-1} N_e \, de,^{11}$$

where  $N_e$  is the number of eigenvalues of  $H$  less than or equal to  $-e$ , which is a monotonically decreasing step function.

*Proof.* Since  $N_e$  is a step function,

$$\partial_e N_e = -\sum_j \delta_{E_j}(-e).$$

Therefore

$$\sum_j e_j^\gamma = -\int_0^\infty e^\gamma \partial_e N_e \, de,$$

and the result follows after integrating by parts.  $\square$

If  $B_e$  is the number of eigenvalues of  $K(-e)$  greater than or equal to 1, where  $K = V_-^{1/2}(-\Delta + e)V_-^{1/2}$ , then as we saw

$$\begin{aligned} N_e &= B_e \\ &= \sum_{\substack{v \geq 1 \\ v \in \text{Spec}(K(-e))}} 1 \\ (10.2) \quad &\leq \sum_{\substack{v \geq 1 \\ v \in \text{Spec}(K(-e))}} v^m \end{aligned}$$

for any  $m > 0$ .

The Green's function for  $e$  is  $G_e := -\Delta + e$ . Hence we can bound (10.2):

$$(10.3) \quad (10.2) \leq \text{tr}(K(-e))^m = \text{tr}(U^{1/2} G_e U^{1/2})^m.$$

This is a somewhat miraculous fact, which relies on the following lemma. We won't prove it, because that in itself would take the whole hour!

**Lemma 10.4.** *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be positive, self-adjoint operators. Then,*

$$\text{tr}(B^{1/2} A B^{1/2})^m \leq \text{tr}(B^{m/2} A^m B^{m/2}).$$

For a proof, see Leib-Seiringer's book, or Bhatia's book on matrix analysis.

The Green's function here is

$$G_e(x, y) = \frac{\exp(-\sqrt{e}|x - y|)}{2\pi|x - y|}.$$

We'll let  $\tilde{G}_e(x - y) := G_e(x, y)$ , as it only depends on their difference. Observe that

$$(G_e^m)(x, y) = \int \tilde{G}_e(x - x_1) \tilde{G}_e(x_1 - x_2) \cdots \tilde{G}_e(x_{m-1}, y) \, dx_1 \cdots dx_{m-1},$$

so  $(G_e^m)(x, y)$  is a function of  $x - y$  as well.

<sup>11</sup>This  $e$  is a variable, not Euler's constant.

Now, applying Lemma 10.4 to (10.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} N_E &\leq \operatorname{tr} \left( U^{m/2} G_e^m U^{m/2} \right) \\ &= \operatorname{tr} (U^m(x) G_e^m(x, y)) \\ &= \tilde{G}_e^m(0) \int U^m(x) \, dx, \end{aligned}$$

using a Fourier estimate for  $G_e(0)$  as an integral of its Fourier transform.

Therefore we conclude that

$$(10.5) \quad \sum_j e_j^\gamma \leq C \int_0^\infty e^{\gamma-m+3/2} \, de \int U^m(x) \, dx.$$

This is never convergent: we need  $\gamma - m + 3/2$  to be  $< -1$  (so that it converges at  $\infty$ ) and  $> -1$  (so it converges at 0). So we need to do something smarter.

The trick is to instead of  $U$ , consider

$$W_e := \left( V + \frac{e}{2} \right)_- = \left( V_+ - \left( V_- - \frac{e}{2} \right) \right).$$

Then,

$$N_e(-V_-) = N_{e/2} \left( -V_- + \frac{e}{2} \right) \leq N_{e/2}(W_e),$$

since  $W_e \geq V_- - e/2$ . Therefore we can replace  $U$  by  $W_e$  and  $e$  by  $e/2$  everywhere in (10.5), obtaining

$$\sum_j e_j^\gamma \leq \gamma C_m \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} dx \left( \int de e^{\gamma-1-m+d/2} \left( V_-(x) - \frac{e}{2} \right)^m \right).$$

Here  $d$  is the dimension (in the end we care about  $d = 3$ , but being general will make it clearer where everything comes from). Since  $W_e(x) = (V + e/2)_-$ , then its support is contained within  $\{x \mid V_-(x) - e/2 \geq 0\}$ .

Let  $a := 2V_-(x)$  and  $\tilde{e} := a \cdot e$ . Then,

$$2^{-d/2} \int_0^a e^k (a - e)^m \, de = a^{k+m+1} 2^{-d/2} \int_0^1 \tilde{e}^k (1 - \tilde{e})^m \, d\tilde{e}.$$

If we assume  $k, m > -1$ , though we already knew  $m > 0$  anyways, then the above integral converges, and we can let

$$B_{m,d} := \int_0^1 \tilde{e}^k (1 - \tilde{e})^m \, d\tilde{e}.$$

Moreover, we have

$$\gamma - 1 - m + \frac{d}{2} > -1,$$

and therefore that

$$m < \gamma + \frac{d}{2}.$$

Specializing to  $d = 3$ , and choosing  $m < \gamma + d/2$  (a popular choice is  $(\gamma + d)/2$ ), we get the Lieb-Thirring inequality.

**Theorem 10.6** (Lieb-Thirring inequality).

$$\sum_j e_j^\gamma \leq \gamma C_{d,m} \int dx (V_-(x))^{\gamma+d/2},$$

where  $C_{d,m}$  is a constant depending on  $d$  and  $m$ .

This will be useful later, when we need to control the kinetic energy when analyzing the stability of matter.

A *bound state* of the Hamiltonian is a state  $u_j$  that is an eigenvector for a negative eigenvalue  $E_j$ . Physically, these correspond to states where the electron is bound to the nucleus.

Later, we'll show that  $|u_j(x)|$  is rapidly decaying (specifically, exponentially). If we consider the Schrödinger equation

$$(10.7) \quad i\partial_t u = Hu, \quad u(0) = u_j$$

for these  $u_j$ , the solutions we obtain are periodic:

$$u(t) = e^{-itE_j} u_j(0).$$

If one imagines a gravitational potential, these correspond to circular, constant-height orbits around a gravitational source.

**Scattering states.** Let  $H = -\Delta + V$ . Let  $\mathcal{H}_b$  denote the span of the eigenfunctions of  $H$ . We want to study solutions of the Schrödinger equation, as in (10.7), but where  $u_0 \in \mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ .

We should assume a bound on the potential: precisely, we require for every 3-tuple  $\alpha$ ,

$$|\partial_x^\alpha V(x)| \leq (1 + |x|)^{-\mu - |\alpha|}.$$

Here  $|\alpha| := \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3$ , and

$$\partial_x^\alpha := \prod_{j=1}^3 \partial_{x_j}^{\alpha_j}.$$

Scattering takes information at  $t = -\infty$  to  $t = \infty$ . Wave operators bring information from the far past or far future to the current time.

**Definition 10.8.** The *wave operators* are the operators

$$\Omega^\pm \phi := \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} e^{itH} e^{-it\Delta} \phi.$$

Sometimes, one also writes  $H_0 := -\Delta$ . To precisely define  $e^{-itH}$ , one writes it as

$$e^{-itH} := \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_\Gamma e^{itz} \frac{1}{z - H} dz,$$

where  $\Gamma$  is a contour enclosing  $\sigma(H)$ .<sup>12</sup>

Wave operators don't always exist, but we'll prove that they exist in the presence of *short-range interactions* (i.e.  $\mu > 1$ ), and moreover they are  $L^2$ -isometries.

Thus

$$(10.9) \quad \begin{aligned} \left\| e^{-itH} \psi_0 - e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \right\|_{L^2} &= \left\| \psi_0 - e^{itH} e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \right\|_{L^2} \\ &\xrightarrow{t \rightarrow \infty} \left\| \psi_0 - \Omega^+ \phi_0 \right\|_{L^2} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\psi_0 = \Omega^+ \phi_0$  tells us that  $\psi_0$  and  $\phi_0$  have the same long-range physics. We'll investigate this further next time.

Lecture 11.

### Scattering states: 10/5/17

"As you've all noticed, we're all stable, at least physically..."

Recall that we've been studying Hamiltonians of the form  $H = -\Delta + V$ , where  $H_0 = -\Delta$ , and considering  $\mathcal{H}_b$ , the subspace spanned by bound states. Assume that the potential is rapidly decreasing, in that there's a  $\mu > 1$  (corresponding to short-range behavior) such that

$$|\partial_x^\alpha V(x)| \leq \left( \frac{1}{\langle x \rangle} \right)^{\mu + |\alpha|}.$$

<sup>12</sup>Another way to define it is

$$e^{-itH} := \frac{1}{2\pi} \lim_{\epsilon \searrow 0} \operatorname{Im} \int_{\mathbb{R}} e^{-i\lambda t} \frac{1}{\lambda + i\epsilon - H} d\lambda.$$



We want to study the asymptotic behavior of  $\psi(t) = e^{-itH}\psi_0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Last time, we defined the wave operators

$$\Omega^\pm := \text{s-lim}_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} e^{itH} e^{-itH_0}.$$

Then, we have (10.9), with the implication that

$$(11.1a) \quad \left\| e^{-itH}\psi_0 - e^{-itH_0}\phi_0 \right\|_{L^2} \xrightarrow{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} 0$$

if and only if

$$(11.1b) \quad \|\psi_0 - \Omega^\pm \phi_0\|_{L^2} = 0,$$

if and only if

$$(11.1c) \quad \psi_0 = \Omega^\pm \phi_0.$$

The existence of the operators  $\Omega^\pm$  is equivalent to the existence of *scattering states*

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} e^{itH} e^{-itH_0} \phi_0.$$

Thus, one is led to ask, given a  $\psi_0 \in \mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ , does there exist a  $\phi_0 \in L^2$  making (11.1c) true? This is called asymptotic completeness.

**Proposition 11.2.**  $\text{Im}(\Omega^+) \subset \mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ .

*Proof.* Assume that  $g \in \mathcal{H}_b$ ,  $Hg = \lambda g$ , and  $\phi \in L^2 \cap L^1$ . Since  $g \in \mathcal{H}_b$ , it's in both  $L^2$  and  $L^1$ , and moreover has exponential decay. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle g, \Omega^+ \phi_0 \rangle &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \langle g, e^{itH} e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \rangle \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \langle e^{-it\lambda} g, e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \rangle \\ &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e^{it\lambda} \langle g, e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

We can write  $e^{-itH_0}$  as a kernel:

$$(e^{-itH_0} \phi_0)(x) = \left( \frac{1}{2\pi it} \right)^{3/2} \int \exp\left(-i \frac{|x-y|^2}{4t}\right) \phi_0(y) dy.$$

This implies

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \langle g, e^{-itH_0} \phi_0 \rangle \right| &\leq \left( \frac{1}{2\pi t} \right)^{3/2} \iint \left| \overline{g(x)} \exp\left(-i \frac{|x-y|^2}{4t}\right) \phi_0(y) \right| dx dy \\ &\leq \left( \frac{1}{2\pi t} \right)^{3/2} \|g\|_{L^1} \|\phi_0\|_{L^1}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $g, \phi \in L^1$ , this goes to 0 as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Finally, density implies the result for a general  $\phi_0 \in L^2$ .  $\square$

**Definition 11.3.** If  $\text{Im}(\Omega^+) = \mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ , one says the property of *asymptotic completeness* holds. There's a similar definition for  $\Omega^-$ .

Equivalently,  $\mathcal{H}_b \oplus \text{Im}(\Omega^+) = L^2$ .

**Example 11.4.** Suppose  $V \in L^1 \cap L^\infty$  with sufficiently small norm. Then, asymptotic completeness holds.  $\blacktriangleleft$

To really do asymptotic completeness justice, we'll need some better tools, namely the Strichartz estimates from harmonic analysis. I haven't seen them before (and apparently I'm the only such person in the class), so we'll have to return to this later.

Given a  $\psi_0$ , we can define  $\phi_\pm$  by  $\psi_0 = \Omega^+ \phi_+$  and  $\psi_0 = \Omega^- \phi_-$ .  $\phi_-$  represents the  $-\infty$ -time state that flows to  $\psi_0$ , and  $\phi_+$  denotes the  $+\infty$ -time state which has initial value  $\psi_0$ .

**Definition 11.5.** The *scattering operator* is  $S := \Omega^{+*} \Omega^-$ .

This operator sends  $\phi_- \mapsto \phi_+$ , and in this sense sees all of time for this theory.

*Remark.* In physics, this arises when one has waves or beams of particles which interact with each other. In this case,  $t = \pm\infty$  is physically meaningful, as the interactions only exist for a few seconds, and therefore one minute in the past is an acceptable substitute for  $t = -\infty$ !

This is used in bubble chambers to learn more about the structure of atoms and subatomic particles. Feynman diagrams are needed to calculate matrix coefficients for  $S$ , i.e. coefficients of the form  $\langle u_i, Su_j \rangle$  for an orthonormal basis  $\{u_j\}$  of the Hilbert space, and these quantities are used to calculate expectations for measured quantities.  $\triangleleft$

Note also that

$$\Omega^+ \phi_+ = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e^{itH} e^{-itH_0} \phi_+.$$

Replacing  $t \mapsto t + s$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e^{isH} e^{itH} e^{-itH_0} e^{-isH_0} \phi_+ \\ &= e^{isH} \Omega^+ e^{-isH_0} \phi_+. \end{aligned}$$

A similar statement for  $\Omega^-$  means

$$e^{-isH} \Omega^\pm = \Omega^\pm e^{-isH_0},$$

and differentiating at  $s = 0$ ,

$$(11.6) \quad H\Omega^\pm = \Omega^\pm H_0.$$

That is, the wave operators intertwine the full Hamiltonian and the free Hamiltonian.

If in addition we have asymptotic completeness, then  $\Omega^{\pm*} = (\Omega^\pm)^{-1}$  on  $\mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ , so (11.6) means that on  $\mathcal{H}_b^\perp$ ,

$$H = \Omega^\pm H_0 \Omega^{\pm*}.$$

Thus the Hamiltonian is diagonalized by the wave operators.

In general, it seems like wave operators are really nice — so it would be good to know that they exist.

**Theorem 11.7.** *If  $V \in L^2$ , then the wave operators  $\Omega^\pm$  exist.*

*Proof.* Let

$$\Omega_t := e^{itH} e^{-itH_0}.$$

Its operator norm is 1, so we'll prove the existence of  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \Omega_t \phi$  when  $\phi \in L^1 \cap L^2$ , then invoke the density of  $L^1$  in  $L^2$ .

Let  $t > t'$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_t \phi - \Omega_{t'} \phi &= \int_{t'}^t \partial_s \Omega_s \phi \, ds \\ &= i \int_{t'}^t e^{isH} \underbrace{(H - H_0)}_V e^{-isH_0} \phi \, ds. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \|\Omega_t \phi - \Omega_{t'} \phi\|_{L^2} &\leq \int_{t'}^t \|V e^{-isH_0} \phi\|_{L^2} \, ds \\ &\leq \|V\|_{L^2} \int_{t'}^t \|e^{-isH_0} \phi\|_{L^\infty} \, ds, \end{aligned}$$

and since  $\|e^{-isH_0} \phi\|_{L^\infty} \leq (1/2\pi s)^{3/2} \|\phi\|_{L^1}$ , this simplifies to

$$(11.8) \quad \leq C \|V\|_{L^2} \|\phi\|_{L^1} \left( \left( \frac{1}{t'} \right)^{1/2} - \left( \frac{1}{t} \right)^{1/2} \right).$$

For all  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there's a  $T = T(\varepsilon)$  such that (11.8) is less than  $\varepsilon$  for  $t, t' > T$ , and therefore this is Cauchy in  $L^2$ .  $\square$

**Stability of matter.** If electrons were described by Newton's laws of mechanics, then eventually, energy would get lost and the electron would spiral into the nucleus, ultimately causing matter to implode. Obviously this doesn't happen, and one of the reasons is Heisenberg's uncertainty principle — which is not quite a physical law, but a theorem about Fourier transforms, and it applies to stability of matter, and another application in information transfer via radio waves, and plenty of other physical phenomena.

Let  $H = -\Delta + V$ . Then,  $H$  is bounded below iff  $\inf \text{Spec } H > -\infty$ . The eigenstates for negative eigenvalues correspond to systems where the electron is bound. Asking for stability imposes some more conditions, e.g. that the infimum is linearly proportional to the number of particles present in the system.

The *ground state* of the system is  $E_0 := \inf \text{Spec } H$ ; we want to make sure this is finite.

**Example 11.9.** Let  $H = -\Delta - 1/|x|$ , corresponding to a hydrogen atom. Is hydrogen stable?

The energy of the system is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}[\psi] &= (\psi, H\psi) = \int |\nabla \psi|^2 - \int \frac{1}{|x|} \psi^2 \\ &= \|\nabla \psi\|_{L^2}^2 - \left\| \frac{1}{|x|^{1/2}} \psi \right\|_{L^2}^2 \\ (11.10) \quad &\geq \|\nabla \psi\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\nabla\|^{1/2} \psi\|_{L^2}, \end{aligned}$$

using the *Hardy inequality*

$$\left\| \frac{1}{|x|^s} \psi \right\|_{L^2} \leq \|\nabla\|^s \psi\|_{L^2}.$$

We can proceed further with a form of the *Gagliardo-Nirenberg inequality*

$$\begin{aligned} \|\nabla\|^{1/2} \psi\|_{L^2}^2 &= \int \bar{\psi} |\zeta| \hat{\psi} \, d\xi \\ &\leq \|\hat{\psi}\|_{L^2} \|\zeta| \hat{\psi}\|_{L^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$(11.10) \geq \|\nabla \psi\|_{L^2}^2 - \|\psi\|_{L^2} \|\nabla \psi\|_{L^2},$$

and one can show that no matter which of these is large, it's still bounded below. ◀

Lecture 12.

### Stability of the First Kind: 10/10/17

*"At the beginning of one's education, one imagines 'if I could solve the equation, I would know everything.' Unfortunately, solving equations is hard."*

Last time, we discussed three inequalities that arose in our analysis of the stability of matter: the Hardy inequality, a Gagliano-Nirenberg inequality, and the Sobolev inequality. Today, we're going to play more with these inequalities.

Recall that the hydrogen operator has Schrödinger operator

$$H = -\Delta - \frac{1}{|x|}.$$

Then, the expectation of  $u$  is

$$(u, Hu) = \int |\nabla u|^2 - \int \frac{1}{|x|} |u|^2.$$

The second piece is also  $\|u/|x|^{1/2}\|_{L^2}$ , and the Hardy inequality says there's a  $C$  such that

$$\left\| \frac{1}{|x|^{1/2}} u \right\|_{L^2} \leq C_H \|\nabla\|^s u\|_{L^2}.$$

Using this, we concluded that

$$(u, Hu) \geq \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2 - C_H \|u\|_{L^2} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2} > -\infty.$$

One might ask whether the cusp in the potential at 0 leads the ground state to concentrate at 0 (in the ground state, the particle is in expectation near the origin). Concretely, one asks whether  $(u, x^2 u) \rightarrow 0$ . The answer is no.

$$(12.1a) \quad 1 = \|u\|_{L^2}^2 = \left( u, \frac{1}{|x|} |x| u \right)_{L^2}$$

$$(12.1b) \quad = \left( \frac{1}{|x|} u, |x| u \right)_{L^2}.$$

By Cauchy-Schwarz,

$$(12.1c) \quad \leq \left\| \frac{1}{|x|} u \right\|_{L^2} \| |x| u \|_{L^2},$$

and by the Hardy inequality,

$$(12.1d) \quad \leq C_H \|\nabla u\|_{L^2} \| |x| u \|_{L^2}.$$

Therefore

$$\|\nabla u\|_{L^2} \geq C \frac{1}{(u, x^2 u)^{1/2}}.$$

Thus the ground state cannot concentrate at 0 or even anywhere, because the kinetic energy would diverge.

Collecting equations (12.1a) to (12.1d), one has the inequality

$$(12.2) \quad 1 \leq C_H \|\nabla u\|_{L^2} \| |x| u \|_{L^2},$$

which is called the *Heisenberg uncertainty principle*. Heisenberg originally formulated this as a physical law, but it's really a mathematical theorem which happens to apply to physics. It comes out of Fourier analysis, and appears in Fourier-theoretic contexts that have nothing to do with physics.

*Remark.* There's a rich and classic literature about actually constructing the ground state of the hydrogen atom, which uses spherical harmonics. We won't go into this, though.  $\blacktriangleleft$

**Definition 12.3.** We say that a physical system  $H = -\Delta + V$  (where  $V \rightarrow 0$  as  $|x| \rightarrow \infty$ ) has *stability of the 1<sup>st</sup> kind* if  $E_0 := \inf \text{Spec } H > -\infty$ .

**Theorem 12.4.** Assuming that

$$V \in \begin{cases} L^{d/2}(\mathbb{R}^d) + L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^d), & d \geq 3 \\ L^{1+\epsilon}(\mathbb{R}^2) + L^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2), & d = 2 \\ L^1(\mathbb{R}) + L^\infty(\mathbb{R}), & d = 1, \end{cases}$$

then  $E_0 > -\infty$  and the system has stability of the 1<sup>st</sup> kind. Moreover,

$$\|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2 \leq C_1 \mathcal{E}(u) + C_2 \|u\|_{L^2}^2,$$

where  $\mathcal{E}(u) := (u, H)$ .

*Proof for  $d \geq 3$ .* We have

$$\mathcal{E}(u) = \int |\nabla u|^2 + \int V |u|^2.$$

When  $d = 3$ , we want to write  $V = V_1 + V_\infty$  where  $V_1 \in L^{3/2}$  and  $V_\infty \in L^\infty$ . Assuming this,

$$\mathcal{E}(u) \geq \frac{1}{2} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2 - \underbrace{\int V_1 |u|^2}_{(I)} - \underbrace{\int V_\infty |u|^2}_{(II)}.$$

Since  $V_\infty$  is  $L^\infty$ , we know that for some  $C_\infty \in \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$(12.5) \quad (II) \leq C_\infty \|u\|_{L^2}^2.$$

Next, we use the Hölder inequality to dispatch (I).

$$(I) \leq \|V_1\|_{L^{3/2}} \| |u|^2 \|_{L^2},$$

where  $1/r + 2/3 = 1$ , so  $r = 6$ . Now, using the Sobolev inequality,

$$(12.6) \quad \leq \|V_1\|_{L^{3/2}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2.$$

*Remark.* The Sobolev inequality might not be familiar to everyone in the audience.<sup>13</sup> The idea is that differentiability of a function, measured in the  $L^p$ -norm, also controls its  $L^q$ -norm. The way to remember the precise exponents is to remember that it's invariant under scaling  $x \mapsto \lambda x$ , so if you want there to be a  $C$  such that

$$\left( \int |u|^p dx \right)^{1/p} \leq C \left( \int |\nabla^s u|^2 dx \right)^{1/2},$$

scaling by  $\lambda$  on the left-hand side produces a factor of  $\lambda^{d/p}$ , and scaling by  $\lambda$  on the right-hand side produces a factor of  $\lambda^{d/2}$  (from the  $|u|^2$ ) and a factor of  $\lambda^{-s}$  (from the derivative). Thus we'd better have that

$$\frac{d}{p} = \frac{d}{2} - s,$$

or  $s = d(1/2 - 1/p)$ , and indeed this was true for  $p = 6$ ,  $d = 3$ , and  $s = 1$  as we used it above.  $\blacktriangleleft$

Using (12.5) and (12.6), we obtain what looks like a lower bound.

$$(12.7) \quad \mathcal{E}(x) \geq \underbrace{\left( \frac{1}{2} - C \|V_1\|_{L^{3/2}} \right)}_{(III)} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2 - C_\infty \|u\|_{L^2}^2.$$

However, if  $\|V_1\|_{L^{3/2}}$  is large, (III)  $< 0$ , and this lower bound is not helpful. So we need to make sure that  $V_1$  is small, or (III)  $> 0$ . For this we use the Chebyshev inequality. Let  $A_{>}(\lambda) := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^d \mid |V(x)| > \lambda\}$  and  $A_{<}(\lambda) := (A_{>}(\lambda))^c$ .

**Lemma 12.8** (Chebyshev inequality). *For any  $p$ ,*

$$|A_{>}(\lambda)| \leq \frac{\|V\|_{L^p}^p}{\lambda^p}.$$

*Proof.*

$$\int_{A_{>}(\lambda)} |V|^p \geq \lambda^p \int_{A_{>}(\lambda)} 1 = \lambda^p |A_{>}(\lambda)|. \quad \boxtimes$$

For any  $\lambda$ ,  $u|_{A_{<}(\lambda)}$  is  $L^\infty$ , and

$$\int_{A_{>}(\lambda)} |V|^p \leq \|V\|_{L^p}^p,$$

and the left-hand side is monotonically decreasing to 0 as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ . Therefore there's a  $\lambda_*$  such that for all  $\lambda > \lambda_*$ ,  $\|V\|_{L^p(A_{>}(\lambda))} < 1/4$ . Thus, for  $\lambda$  sufficiently large, we can define  $V_1 := V|_{A_{>}(\lambda)}$ , which implies that  $V_\infty := V - V_1 \in L^\infty$ , and that (III)  $> 0$ , so  $\mathcal{E}(u)$  is bounded below.

We had assumed  $d = 3$ , and used this only in (12.6) when invoking the Sobolev inequality. In the general  $d$ -dimensional case, Hölder tells us that

$$\int |V_1| |u|^2 \leq \|V_1\|_{L^{d/2}} \| |u|^2 \|_{L^r},$$

where  $2/d + 1/r = 1$ , i.e.  $r = 2d/(d-2)$ , so

$$\leq \|V_1\|_{L^{d/2}} \|u\|_{L^{2d/(d-2)}}^2.$$

The Sobolev inequality says that  $s = d(1/2 - 1/p)$ , so with  $p = 2d/(d-2)$ ,  $s = 1$ , so

$$\leq \|V_1\|_{L^{d/2}} \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2.$$

Thus again

$$\mathcal{E}(u) \geq \left( \frac{1}{2} - C_2 \|V_1\|_{L^{d/2}} \right) \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}^2 - \|V_\infty\|_{L^\infty} \|u\|_{L^2}^2.$$

<sup>13</sup>Certainly, I am only weakly familiar with it.

For a suitable choice of  $V_1$ , which can be produced by Chebyshev's inequality, the first term is positive, and we win.  $\square$

After studying one-particle systems, we naturally move to many-particle systems, which will have a second-order stability condition. "Many" could mean different things in different contexts: for atoms other than hydrogen, it might be in the dozens, but if you're analyzing something like a neutron star, it might be  $10^{10}$  or something in that ballpark. You can set up the Schrödinger equation in this context, but if you solve it, obtaining some explicit function of  $10^{10}$  variables, it's not going to give you any great insights.

Let's consider a quantum-mechanical system with  $N$  variables, so its wavefunctions  $\psi$  live in  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^{dN})$ , and we write  $\psi = \psi(x_1, \dots, x_N)$ , with  $x_j \in \mathbb{R}^d$ , and

$$\|\psi\|_{L^2} = \int |\psi(x_1, \dots, x_N)|^2 dx_1 \cdots dx_N = 1.$$

The probability density of finding a particle at  $x$  (which becomes a probability after normalization) is

$$C_\psi(x) := \sum_{j=1}^N \int_{\mathbb{R}^{d(N-1)}} |\psi(x_1, \dots, x_{j-1}, x, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_N)| dx_1 \cdots \widehat{dx_j} \cdots dx_N.$$

That is, let  $x$  stand in for  $x_j$ , and don't integrate out over  $x_j$ .

Now it's time to say something important in life, and talk about fermions. We've been studying non-relativistic quantum mechanics, but everything is relativistic, and almost everything is Lorentz invariant. Therefore we want the kinds of particles in our theories to match this description, and according to quantum field theory there are only two kinds of elementary particles, bosons and fermions.

This can be deduced from mathematics! Specifically, relativistic quantum field theory tells us that particles are given by representations of the group preserving the Lorentz metric on  $\mathbb{R}^4$ , which is  $SL(2, \mathbb{C})$  (containing  $SU(2)$ , the maximal compact subgroup). There are three pieces:

- One-dimensional representations  $\phi(t, x)$ .
- Two-dimensional representations  $(\psi_1, \psi_2)(t, x) \in \mathbb{C}^2$ , called *spinors*.
- Three-dimensional representations  $(A_1, A_2, A_3)(t, x) \in \mathbb{C}^3$ , called *vectors*.

The *spin* of such a  $k$ -dimensional representation is  $(k-1)/2$ . If  $s \in \mathbb{N}$ , then the particle is called a *boson*; if  $s \in \mathbb{N} + 1/2$ , it's called a *fermion*. The reason for this dichotomy is which kind of equation they satisfy.

- Spin-0 particles satisfy the *Klein-Gordon equation*

$$(\partial_t^2 - \Delta)\phi = m^2\phi.$$

- Spin-1/2 particles satisfy the *Dirac equation*<sup>14</sup>

$$m\gamma_0\Psi + \sum_j \gamma^j i\nabla_j \Psi = 0.$$

Here  $\Psi := (\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi_3, \psi_4)$ .

- For spin-1 particles, one has a *Maxwell equation*.

The difference is that the Dirac equation is indefinite: its spectrum is not bounded below, and therefore the theory is unstable. This causes problems that will be solved by quantization, but that introduces its own weirdness — if you assume that spacelike separated particles in Minkowski space have commuting operators and that the quantized Dirac operators have bounded-below spectrum, one obtains that the particle creation and annihilation operators for bosons must anticommute! And in fact the function itself is antisymmetric. This is encoded in the spin-statistics theorem of Pauli-Fierz.

Photons are bosons, and electrons are fermions. We'll say more about this next time.

<sup>14</sup>**TODO:** The heuristic is right, but there's something wrong with the equation.

Lecture 13.

**Density matrices and stability of matter: 10/12/17**

Today we're going to discuss stability of matter in earnest. To truly understand this, one has to make some hardcore estimates, which we're not going to get into. However, we will mention where the estimates are, and provide estimates.

Last time, we mentioned that there are only two kinds of elementary particles, bosons and fermions, a classification of particles by their mutual statistics. Bosons are described by a Schrödinger wavefunction  $\psi(x_1, \dots, x_N) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{dN})$  which is symmetric under arbitrary permutations of the particles  $x_1, \dots, x_N$ . That is, if  $S_N$  denotes the symmetric group on  $N$  letters, this wavefunction lives in

$$L^2_{\text{sym}}(\mathbb{R}^{dN}) := L^2(\mathbb{R}^{dN})^{S_N}.$$

Fermions are again described by Schrödinger wavefunctions, but are completely antisymmetric under permutations:

$$\psi(x_1, \dots, x_N) = (-1)^{\text{sign}(\sigma)} \psi(x_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, x_{\sigma(N)})$$

for any  $\sigma \in S_N$ . Here  $\text{sign}(\sigma)$  is its *signature*: a permutation can be written as a composition of transpositions, and the signature is the number of transpositions mod 2, which is well-defined. The subspace of antisymmetric functions is denoted  $L^2_{\text{anti}}(\mathbb{R}^{dN})$ .

Matter is fermionic, so we're going to study stability of matter for fermions.

**Density matrices.** Let  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{dN})$  with  $\|\psi\| = 1$ , and then define

$$\Gamma_\psi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') := \psi(\mathbf{x}) \overline{\psi(\mathbf{x}')},$$

where  $\mathbf{x} := (x_1, \dots, x_N)$ . This defines an integral operator with kernel  $\Gamma_\psi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}')$ :

$$(\Gamma_\psi \phi)(\mathbf{x}) = (\psi, \phi) \psi(\mathbf{x}),$$

because

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_\psi \phi &= \int \Gamma_\psi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}') \phi(\mathbf{x}') d\mathbf{x}' \\ &= \psi(\mathbf{x}) \underbrace{\int \overline{\psi(\mathbf{x}')} \phi(\mathbf{x}') d\mathbf{x}'}_{(\psi, \phi)}. \end{aligned}$$

In bra-ket notation,  $|\psi\rangle$  refers to  $\psi$  as a column vector, and  $\langle\psi|$  refers to it as a row vector (its adjoint in the dual space). Then,  $\Gamma_\psi = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi|$ , and it's a projection, because

$$\Gamma_\psi \Gamma_\psi = |\psi\rangle \underbrace{\langle\psi| \psi\rangle}_{=1} \langle\psi| = |\psi\rangle\langle\psi| = \Gamma_\psi.$$

This shows off the reason people like bra-ket notation:  $\langle\psi| \phi\rangle$  is exactly their inner product.

$\Gamma$  is an example of a density matrix.

**Definition 13.1.** A *density matrix* is a linear, self-adjoint, positive semidefinite operator  $\Gamma$  with unit trace:  $0 \leq \Gamma \leq \mathbf{1}$  and  $\text{tr} \Gamma = 1$ .

Let  $(\phi_j)$  be an orthonormal basis for  $L^2$ . Then

$$\text{tr} \Gamma = \sum_j (\phi_j, \Gamma \phi_j);$$

since this is finite,  $\Gamma$  has a pure point spectrum: there are eigenvectors  $\phi_j$  with corresponding eigenvalues  $\lambda_j$  such that  $\|\phi_j\|_{L^2} = 1$  and

$$\Gamma = \sum_j \lambda_j |\phi_j\rangle\langle\phi_j|.$$

Thus

$$\text{tr} \Gamma = \sum_j \lambda_j = 1.$$

A density matrix which is not a rank-1 projection is called a *mixed state*; otherwise it is a *pure state*.

**Quantum mechanics and ground state energy.** Let  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{dN})$  have unit norm. Then,  $\mathcal{E}[\psi] = (\psi, H\psi)$ , where  $H$  is the Hamiltonian (an  $N$ -body Schrödinger operator). More generally, the *energy functional* for a density matrix  $\Gamma$  is

$$\mathcal{E}[\Gamma] = \text{tr}(H\Gamma).$$

We can simplify this somewhat:

$$(13.2) \quad \text{tr}(H\Gamma) = \sum_{\lambda_j} \text{tr}(H|\psi_i\rangle\langle\psi_j|)$$

$$(13.3) \quad \begin{aligned} &= \sum_j \lambda_j (\phi_j, H\phi_j) \\ &= \sum_j \lambda_j \mathcal{E}[\Gamma_{\phi_j}]. \end{aligned}$$

Here's why we can get from (13.2) to (13.3): let

$$K_j(x, \tilde{x}) := \overline{\phi_j(\tilde{x})} (H\phi_j)(x) = \underbrace{\int H(x, x') \phi(x) dx'}_{H|\phi_j\rangle\langle\phi_j|} \overline{\phi_j(\tilde{x})}.$$

Then,

$$\text{tr } K = \int \overline{\phi_j} H \phi_j. \text{<sup>15</sup>}$$

It will also be helpful to know about reduced density matrices, or marginals.

**Definition 13.4.** Let  $\Gamma$  be a density matrix, fermionic or bosonic. Its  $k$ -particle *marginal* is

$$\gamma^{(k)}(\mathbf{x}_k, \mathbf{x}'_k) = \frac{N!}{(N-k)!} \int \Gamma(\mathbf{x}_k, \mathbf{y}_{N-k}; \mathbf{x}'_k, \mathbf{y}_{N-k}) d\mathbf{y}_{N-k},$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_k := (x_1, \dots, x_k)$ .

These arise as iterated partial traces, e.g.  $\gamma^{(1)}$  is  $1/(N-1)$  times a partial trace of  $\gamma^{(2)}$ .

The Hamiltonian for  $N$  particles has to take into account particle-particle interactions, e.g. if  $W_{ij} = w(x_i - x_j)$  for some  $w \in \mathbb{R}$ , we could set

$$(13.5) \quad H = - \sum_{j=1}^N \underbrace{(\Delta_{x_j} + V(x_j))}_{=h^{(j)}} + \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq N} W_{ij}.$$

Here  $h^{(j)}$  is the Hamiltonian for one particle (hence cannot see interactions) acting on  $x_j$ . Then,

$$\mathcal{E}[\Gamma] = \text{tr}(H\Gamma) = \text{tr}(h^{(1)}\gamma^{(1)}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr}(W_{12})\gamma^{(2)}.$$

This is something very nice: the expectation only depends on  $\gamma^{(1)}$  and  $\gamma^{(2)}$ , but since  $\gamma^{(1)}$  is a partial trace of  $\gamma^{(2)}$ , it actually only requires  $\gamma^{(2)}$ . This is a consequence of the fact that we started with  $\Gamma$  either bosonic or fermionic.

Now we're going to estimate the kinetic energy piece of (13.5). Recall the Lieb-Thirring estimate for  $H = -\Delta + V$ :

$$\sum_{j \geq 0} |E_j| \leq L \int (V_-(x))^p dx,$$

where  $p = 1 + d/2$ . Let

$$T_{\psi_N} := \left( \psi_N, \left( - \sum_{j=1}^N \Delta_{x_j} \right) \psi_N \right).$$

<sup>15</sup>**TODO:** Then something happened that I didn't get down in time.



**Theorem 13.6.**

$$T_{\psi_N} \geq \frac{K}{\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty}^{p'/p}} \int (\rho_{\psi_N}(x))^{p'} dx,$$

where  $p'$  is the Hölder conjugate to  $p$  ( $1/p' + 1/p = 1$ ),  $\rho_{\psi_N}(x) := \gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}(x, x)$ , and  $K$  is a constant independent of  $N$  and such that

$$(pL)^{p'} (p'K)^p = 1.$$

*Proof.* Let  $H := -\Delta + V$  be the one-particle operator, and  $K_N$  be a sum of one copy of  $H$  acting on each particle  $i$ , which is called the  $N$ -particle operator. Then,

$$(\psi_N, K_N \psi_N) = \text{tr } H \gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}.$$

This is because

$$(\psi_N, H_i \psi_N) = \int \bar{\psi}_N(x_1, \dots, x_n) (H_i \psi_N)(x_1, \dots, x_n) dx_1 \cdots dx_n.$$

Integrating out everything except  $x_i$ , which is the only particle affected by  $H_i$ , we get

$$= \frac{1}{N} \int \left( H_i \gamma^{(1)}(x_i, x'_i) \right) \Big|_{x_i=x'_i} dx_i.$$

**Lemma 13.7.**

$$(\psi_N, K_N \psi_N) \geq \text{TODO}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $E_j$  be the  $j^{\text{th}}$  eigenvalue of  $H$ , which is necessarily negative.

(a few lines missing)

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr } H \gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)} &\geq \sum_{i,j} E_i \lambda_j \text{tr}(|\psi_i\rangle\langle\psi_i| |\phi_j\rangle\langle\phi_j|) \\ &= \sum_{i,j} E_i \lambda_j |(\psi_i, \phi_j)|^2 \\ &\geq \left( \sum_j \lambda_j \right) \sum_i E_i \underbrace{\sum_j |(\psi_i, \phi_j)|^2}_{(\psi_i, \psi_i)=1}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\|\gamma^{(1)}\|_{\text{op}} = \|(\lambda_j)\|_{\infty}$ , then

$$\geq \text{TODO}.$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi_N, J_K \psi_N) &= T_{\psi_N} + \int V(x) \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx \\ &\geq \|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} \sum_{j \geq 0} E_j, \end{aligned}$$

and by the Lieb-Thirring inequality,

$$\geq -\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} L \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (V_-(x))^p dx,$$

where  $p = 1 + d/2$  and  $L$  is the Lieb-Thirring constant. And this holds for general  $V$ . ⊠

So let's choose

$$V(x) = -C \rho_{\psi_N}(x)^{1/(p-1)},$$

where  $1/p + 1/[p] = 1$ , so  $1/(p-1) = p/[p] - 1$ . Then,

$$T_{\psi} \geq C \int (\rho_{\psi_N}(x))^{p'} dx - \|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} L C^p \int (\rho_{\psi_N}(x))^{p'} dx.$$

The optimal value of  $C$  is

$$C = \left( p \|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} L \right)^{-p'/p},$$

so

$$T_{\psi_N} \geq \frac{K}{\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty}^{p'/p}} \int (\rho_{\psi}(x))^{p'} dx.$$

□

Lecture 14.

### Multi-nucleus systems and electrostatic inequalities: 10/17/17

Today we'll discuss the proofs for stability of matter in the fermionic case. We won't give the complete proofs, since they depend on some difficult estimates, but we will sketch them.

Let  $\psi_N$ , as last time, be an antisymmetric wave function for  $N$  fermions, so that as we discussed last time,

$$(14.1) \quad T_{\psi_N} := \left( \psi_N, \left( -\sum_{j=1}^N \Delta_{x_j} \right) \psi_N \right) \geq \frac{K}{\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|_{\infty}^{p'/p}} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} (\rho_{\psi_N}(x))^{p'} dx,$$

where  $p = 1 + d/2$  and  $p'$  is the Hölder conjugate of  $p$ . For fermions,  $\|\gamma_{\psi}^{(1)}\|_{\infty} \leq 1$ , i.e. it's  $O(1)$  in  $N$ . For  $d = 3$ ,  $p' = 5/3$  and  $p = 5/2$ , so since  $\rho_{\psi} \sim O(N)$ , the integral in (14.1) is  $O(N^{5/3})$ .

One way to see this explicitly is to consider  $x \in T^3$ . Under the Fourier transform we get  $\xi \in \mathbb{Z}^3$ , and the fermions can live at the lattice points. The Pauli exclusion principle tells us that at most one fermion can live at each lattice point, and fermions will prefer the lower-energy states which are closer to the origin. Therefore the electron furthest away from the origin will be  $O(N^{1/3})$  away from the origin, and have energy asymptotically varying as  $\xi^2 = O(N^{2/3})$ . Therefore the total kinetic energy varies as  $N \cdot N^{2/3}$ , hence is  $O(N^{5/3})$ . This system is called the *Fermi sea*.

**Many-body Hamiltonians.** We assume there are multiple atomic nuclei of the same atomic number  $Z$  at fixed positions  $\mathbf{R} := (R_1, \dots, R_M)$  together with electrons at varying positions  $\mathbf{x} := (x_1, \dots, x_N)$ .

In this case,<sup>16</sup> the Hamiltonian is

$$(14.2) \quad H := -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^N \Delta_{x_i} + V_C(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{R}),$$

where

$$V_C(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{R}) := W(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{R}) + I(\mathbf{x}) + U(\mathbf{R}).$$

Here

$$W(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{R}) := -\sum_{i=1}^N \sum_{j=1}^M \frac{Z}{|x_i - R_j|}$$

is the piece of the potential coming from electron-nucleus interactions,

$$I(\mathbf{x}) := \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq N} \frac{1}{|x_i - x_j|}$$

is the piece coming from electron-electron interactions, and

$$U(\mathbf{R}) := \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq M} \frac{1}{|R_i - R_j|}$$

is the piece coming from the nucleus-nucleus interactions. The ground state energy of this system is

$$E_N(Z, \mathbf{R}) = \inf \{ \mathcal{E}(\psi) \mid \psi \text{ fermionic and } \|\psi\|_{L^2} = 1 \}.$$

<sup>16</sup>This is a simplified version of the full model, which includes Laplacians for the  $R_j$  terms weighted by the electron mass divided by the nuclear mass. This is a very small number, so we have neglected it by pretending electrons have zero mass.

**Definition 14.3.** We say the system has *stability of the first kind* if  $E_N(Z, \underline{R}) > -\infty$ . In this case, we can define the *absolute ground state*

$$E_{N,M}(Z) := \inf\{E_N(Z, \underline{R}) \mid \underline{R}\}.$$

If in addition

$$E_{N,M}(Z) > -C_0(Z)(N + M),$$

the system has *stability of the second kind*.

**Electrostatic inequalities.** These inequalities appear as ingredients in the proofs of statements we care about, but are interesting and beautiful on their own.

Let  $\mu$  be a Borel measure, which physically represents the charge distribution. It has an associated *potential function*

$$\Phi(x) := \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{1}{|x - y|} d\mu_y.$$

The *Coulomb energy* of  $\mu$  is

$$D(\mu, \mu) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{1}{|x - y|} d\mu_x d\mu_y.$$

More generally, one can compute the Coulomb energy  $D(\mu, \nu)$  of two different Borel measures.

**Theorem 14.4** (Newton's theorem). *Assume that  $\mu$  is rotationally symmetric around the origin. Then,*

$$\Phi(x) = \frac{1}{|x|} \int_{|y| \leq |x|} d\mu_y + \int_{|y| > |x|} \frac{1}{|y|} d\mu_y.$$

*Proof.* Since  $\mu$  is rotationally symmetric,  $\Phi$  is too, so  $\Phi(x) = \Phi(x')$  whenever  $|x| = |x'|$ . Thus

$$\Phi(x) = \int \frac{1}{|x - y|} d\mu_y = \underbrace{\int \int_{S^2} \frac{1}{|x|\omega - y|} d\omega}_{(I)} d\mu_y.$$

Let's expand the inner integral in spherical coordinates, where  $y$  is the direction of the north pole:

$$\begin{aligned} (I) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} d\varphi \frac{1}{2} \int d\theta \frac{1}{(|x|^2 + |y|^2 - 2|x||y|\cos\theta)^{1/2}} \sin\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 \frac{ds}{(|x|^2 + |y|^2 - 2|x||y|s)^{1/2}} \\ &= \min\left(\frac{1}{|x|}, \frac{1}{|y|}\right). \end{aligned}$$

□

It's also possible to extend Coulomb energy from measures to signed measures (differences of two measures) without changing its definition.

**Theorem 14.5.** *Let  $V$  be the vector space of signed Borel measures  $\mu$  on which the Coulomb energy  $D(\mu, \mu)$  is finite. As a quadratic form on  $V$ , the Coulomb energy is positive definite: if  $\mu$  and  $\nu$  are signed measures,*

- $D(\mu, \mu) \geq 0$ , and
- $D(\mu, \nu)^2 \leq D(\mu, \mu)D(\nu, \nu)$ .

*Proof.* We will use the identity

$$(14.6) \quad \frac{1}{|x - y|} = \frac{1}{\pi^3} \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{1}{|x - z|^2} \frac{1}{|y - z|^2} dz.$$

*Remark.* The reason this is true is due to Fourier analysis (in this remark, we ignore factors of  $2\pi$ ):

$$\mathcal{F}\left(\frac{1}{|\cdot|^\alpha}\right)(x) = \frac{1}{|\xi|^{d-\alpha}},$$

so the right-hand side of (14.6) is, after sending  $z \mapsto z + y$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} (RHS) &= \int \frac{1}{|x - y - z|^2} \frac{1}{|z|^2} dz \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{|\cdot|^2} * \frac{1}{|\cdot|^2} \right) (x - y). \end{aligned}$$

If we take this and apply  $\mathcal{F}$ , then  $\mathcal{F}^{-1}$ , we get

$$\mathcal{F}^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{|\xi|^2} \cdot \frac{1}{|\xi|^2} \right) (x - y) = \mathcal{F}^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{|\xi|^2} \right) (x - y) = \frac{1}{|x - y|},$$

which proves (14.6), at least up to a constant.  $\blacktriangleleft$

To prove  $D(\mu, \mu) \geq 0$ , one can apply (14.6) to the definition of  $D(\mu, \mu)$  and see that it's a positive number times a square. Details are **TODO**. The second part follows from Cauchy-Schwarz in the  $z$ -variable.  $\boxtimes$

Now we want to make some estimates on  $(\psi, W\psi)$ . For this we'll need at least a little geometry.

**Definition 14.7.** Let  $R_1, \dots, R_M \in \mathbb{R}^3$  be distinct points, and

$$\Gamma_j := \{x \in \mathbb{R}^3 \mid |x - R_j| < |x - R_i|, i \neq j\}.$$

This  $\Gamma_j$  is the set of points closer to  $R_j$  than any other  $R_i$ , and is open and convex. It's called the *Voronoi cell* associated to  $R_j$ .  $\partial\Gamma_j$  is a finite collection of segments and planes, and possibly the point at infinity.

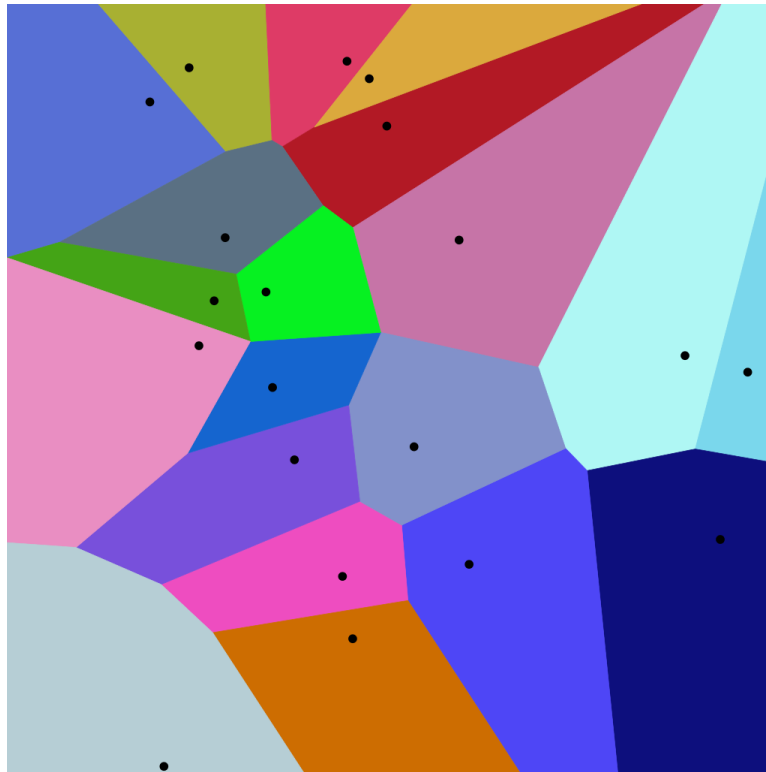


FIGURE 2. Voronoi cells for a collection of points in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Source: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Voronoi\\_diagram](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Voronoi_diagram).

Let

$$D_j := \frac{1}{2} \min_{\ell \neq j} |R_j - R_\ell|$$

denote the distance to the nearest neighboring  $R_\ell$ ,

$$\mathcal{D}(x) := \min\{|x - R_i| \mid 1 \leq i \leq M\}$$

be the distance of  $x$  to the closest nucleus, and

$$\tilde{W}(x) := -W(x) = Z \sum_{j=1}^M \frac{1}{|x - R_j|}.$$

Then, we define

$$\Phi(x) := \tilde{W}(x) - \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)},$$

which (the rest of this board was erased before I could get to it. **TODO**). Notice that  $\Phi$  is continuous, but not differentiable on boundaries of Voronoi cells.

**Theorem 14.8** (Basic electrostatic inequality). *Let  $\mu = \mu_+ - \mu_-$  be a signed measure such that  $D(\mu_\pm, \mu_\pm)$  is finite, and suppose that  $R_1, \dots, R_M \in \mathbb{R}^3$  are distinct. Then,*

$$D(\mu, \mu) - \int \Phi(x) d\mu_x + \sum \frac{Z^2}{|R_k - R_\ell|} \geq \frac{1}{8} \sum_j \frac{Z_j^2}{D_j}.$$

We'll prove this next time, using an auxiliary proposition.

**Proposition 14.9.**

$$(14.10) \quad \Phi(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \frac{1}{|x - y|} dv_y,$$

where  $v$  is some measure supported only on the boundaries of the Voronoi cells.

*Proof.* To see this, let  $f$  be a test function (Schwarz class); then,

$$\begin{aligned} \int \Delta \Phi(x) dx &= \int \Phi(x) \Delta f(x) dx \\ &= \sum_j \int_{\Gamma_j} \Phi(x) \Delta f(x) dx. \end{aligned}$$

Integrating by parts,

$$= \underbrace{\sum_j \int_{\Gamma_j} \operatorname{div}(\Phi \nabla f) dx}_{(I)} - \underbrace{\sum_j \int_{\Gamma_j} \nabla \Phi \cdot \nabla f dx}_{(II)}.$$

Let  $\mathbf{n}$  denote the outward-pointing unit normal vector on  $\partial\Gamma_j$  and  $dS$  denote the surface measure on  $\partial\Gamma_j$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} (I) &= \sum_j \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} \Phi(x) \nabla f \cdot \mathbf{n}_j dS \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

because both  $\Phi$  and  $\nabla f$  are continuous on  $\partial\Gamma_j$ , so the opposite signs of  $\mathbf{n}_j$  cancel out, as each piece of  $\partial\Gamma_j$  is also the boundary of some other Voronoi cell with the opposite outward unit normal. The second piece is a little harder:

$$(II) = - \sum_j \int_{\Gamma_j} \operatorname{div}(f \nabla \Phi) dx + \sum_j \int_{\Gamma_j} f \Delta \Phi dx.$$

But inside  $\Delta \Phi = 0$ , because  $-\Delta(1/|x|) = \delta(x)$ , so the Fourier transform of its second derivative is  $\xi^2/|\xi|^2 = 1$ .

$$(14.11) \quad = - \sum_j \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} f \nabla \Phi \cdot \mathbf{n}_j dS,$$

like before, but this time  $\nabla\Phi$  is not continuous across  $\partial\Gamma_j$ . Here we need to think more carefully about the definition of  $\Phi = \tilde{W} - Z/\mathcal{D}$ . Since  $\tilde{W}$  is differentiable away from the nuclei  $R_j$ , and in particular on  $\partial\Gamma_j$ ,

$$\sum_j \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} f \nabla \tilde{W} \mathbf{n}_j \, dS = 0.$$

Therefore, returning to (14.11),

$$(II) = - \sum_j \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} f \nabla \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} \mathbf{n}_j \, dS.$$

Suppose  $\Gamma_j$  and  $\Gamma_k$  are neighboring cells, and let  $B_{jk} := \partial\Gamma_j \cap \partial\Gamma_k$ . Then,  $\nabla(Z/\mathcal{D}(x))$  has opposite signs depending on from which side one approaches when tending to a point in  $B_{jk}$ , but the magnitude is the same. Therefore

$$\mathbf{n}_j \nabla \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} = \mathbf{n}_k \nabla \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)},$$

where the left side comes from  $\Gamma_j$  and the right side comes from  $\Gamma_k$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \int \Delta\Phi(x) f(x) \, dx &= 2Z \int_{\bigcup_j \partial\Gamma_j} f(x) \underbrace{\mathbf{n}_j \nabla \frac{1}{|x - R_j|}}_v \, dS \\ &= -4\pi \int f(x) \, d\nu_x, \end{aligned}$$

as desired. \(\square\)

Lecture 15.

### Stability of matter for many-body systems: 10/19/17

Recall that we're in the middle of proving stability of matter for many-body systems with fixed nuclei. This system has Hamiltonian given in (14.2), with terms for the electron-electron interactions, electron-nucleus interactions, and nucleus-nucleus interactions. We then proved the basic electrostatic inequality, Theorem 14.8; the proof uses Voronoi cells to understand where  $\Phi$  is continuous but not differentiable. We will continue to use notation from last lecture.

Last time, we proved Proposition 14.9, that

$$\Phi(x) := Z \sum_{k=1}^M \frac{1}{|x - R_k|} - \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)}$$

is actually  $\int 1/|x - y| \, d\nu_y$ , where  $\nu$  is a measure supported only on the boundaries of the Voronoi cells. Today, we'll use that to prove the basic electrostatic inequality.

*Proof of Theorem 14.8.* By Proposition 14.9,  $\int \Phi(x) \, d\mu_x = 2D(\mu, \nu)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} D(\mu, \mu) - \int \Phi(x) \, d\mu_x + \sum_{i < j} \frac{Z^2}{|R_i - R_j|} &= \underbrace{D(\mu - \nu, \mu - \nu)}_{\geq 0} - D(\nu, \nu) + \sum_{i < j} \frac{Z^2}{|R_i - R_j|} \\ &\geq -D(\nu, \nu) + \sum_{i < j} \frac{Z^2}{|R_i - R_j|}. \end{aligned}$$

Let's look at  $D(\nu, \nu)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} D(\nu, \nu) &= \frac{1}{2} \int \Phi(x) \, d\mu_x \\ &= \frac{Z}{2} \int \sum_k \int \delta(y - R_k) \frac{1}{|x - y|} \, dy \, d\nu_x - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} \, d\nu_x. \end{aligned}$$

Since everything is positive, we can switch the order of integration in the first term:

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{Z}{2} \sum_k \int \delta(y - R_k) \Phi(y) dy - \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} dv_x \\ &= \underbrace{\frac{Z}{2} \sum_k \Phi(R_k)}_{(I)} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} dv_x}_{(II)}. \end{aligned}$$

We have that

$$(I) = \sum_{k < \ell} \frac{Z^2}{|R_k - R_\ell|}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} (II) &= \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{8\pi} \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} \frac{1}{|x - R_j|} \mathbf{n}_j \cdot \nabla \frac{1}{|x - R_j|} dS \\ &= - \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{16\pi} \int_{\partial\Gamma_j} \mathbf{n}_j \cdot \nabla \frac{1}{|x - R_j|^2} dS \\ &= \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{16\pi} \int_{\Gamma_j^c} \Delta \frac{1}{|x - R_j|^2} dx \\ &= \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{8\pi} \int_{\Gamma_j^c} \frac{1}{|x - R_j|^4} dx. \end{aligned}$$

We can break this into pieces: for any  $x \in \Gamma_j^c$ , let  $D_j$  be the coordinate of the intersection point of  $\partial\Gamma_j$  and line segment from  $x$  to  $R_j$ . Then,

$$\geq \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{8\pi} \int_{\mathbb{R}} dz \int_{\mathbb{R}} dy \int_{D_j}^{\infty} dx \frac{1}{|x^2 + y^2 + z^2|},$$

and this is certainly bounded below:

$$\geq \sum_j \frac{Z^2}{8} \frac{1}{D_j}. \quad \boxtimes$$

The real reason we care about Theorem 14.8 is to prove stability of matter. First, let's analyze the electron-electron repulsion. Suppose  $\psi_N \in \Lambda^N L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$  is a fermionic (i.e. antisymmetric) wavefunction. Then

$$(15.1) \quad I_{\psi_N} = \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq N} \int \frac{|\psi_N(x_1, \dots, x_N)|^2}{|x_i - x_j|} dx_1 \cdots dx_N.$$

The integrand is  $O(1)$ , so  $I_{\psi_N}$  is  $O(N^2)$ . We can write  $I_{\psi_N}$  as a sum of two pieces:

$$I_{\psi_N} = \mathcal{D}(\rho_{\psi_N}, \rho_{\psi_N}) + \text{ind}_{\psi_N}.$$

The second term ("everything else") is called the *indirect term*. Here recall that

$$\rho_{\psi_N} := \sum_{j=1}^N \int |\psi_N(x_1, \dots, x_{j-1}, x, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_N)| dx_1 \cdots \widehat{dx_j} \cdots dx_N.$$

The bound on the indirect term is quite hard, so we won't prove it.

**Theorem 15.2.**

$$\text{ind}_{\psi_N} \geq -C \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{4/3}.$$

For a proof, see Lieb-Seininger. Thus we have an  $O(N^{4/3})$  lower bound for the indirect term, but  $O(N)$  for the direct term.

Now we'll derive stability of matter (recall  $N$  is the number of electrons, and  $M$  is the number of nuclei).

**Theorem 15.3** (Stability of matter for many-body systems with fixed nuclei). *The ground state energy for many-body systems is linearly proportional to the number of particles.*

*Proof.* The idea of the proof is to show

$$(\psi_N, H\psi_N) \geq -CN \left( 1 + \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{1/3} \right)^2.$$

Then, using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality  $ab \leq a^2/2 + b^2/2$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &\geq -CN \left( 1 + M^{2/3} N^{-2/3} \right) \\ &= -C(N + M^{2/3} N^{1/3}). \end{aligned}$$

Using Young's inequality  $ab \leq a^p/p + b^{p'}/p'$ , where  $p$  and  $p'$  are Hölder conjugates,  $M^{2/3} N^{1/2} \leq M + N$ , so

$$\geq -\tilde{C}(N + M),$$

where  $\tilde{C}$  is some other constant (to absorb the factor of 2).

Now let's look at the pieces, in order to get to that derivation. First, the kinetic term, which the Lieb-Thirring inequality shows is

$$(\psi_N, (-\sum \Delta_{x_j}) \psi_N) \geq \frac{K}{\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\|^{p/p'}} \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} dx,$$

where  $p = 1 + 3/2$  and  $p'$  is its Hölder conjugate. Moreover, using creation and annihilation operators, one gets that  $\|\gamma_{\psi_N}^{(1)}\| \leq 1$ , so

$$(\psi_N, (-\sum \Delta_{x_j}) \psi_N) \geq C \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} dx.$$

The electron-electron term: **TODO**.

The electron-nucleus term:

$$\left( \psi_N, -\sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq N \\ 1 \leq j \leq M}} \frac{Z}{|x_i - R_j|}, \psi_N \right) = -\sum_{k=1}^M \int \frac{Z}{|x - R_k|} \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx.$$

The total Coulomb energy:

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi_N, V_C \psi_N) &\geq \mathcal{D}(\rho_{\psi_N}, \rho_{\psi_N}) - \sum_{k=1}^M \int \frac{Z}{|x - R_k|} \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx + U(\mathbf{R}) - C \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{4/3} \\ &\geq -\int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx - C \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{4/3} \\ (15.4) \quad &\geq -\int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx - C \left( \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} \right)^{1/2} \left( \int \rho_{\psi_N} \right)^{1/2}. \end{aligned}$$

We'll use a generalized Cauchy-Schwarz inequality

$$(15.5) \quad ab \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} a^2 + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon} b^2$$

to infer that

$$-C \left( \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} \right)^{1/2} \left( \int \rho_{\psi_N} \right)^{1/2} \geq -C\varepsilon \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} - \underbrace{\frac{C}{\varepsilon} \int \rho_{\psi_N}}_N$$

and therefore improve (15.4) to

$$(15.6) \quad -\int \frac{Z}{\mathcal{D}(x)} \rho_{\psi_N}(x) dx + C(1 - \varepsilon) \int \rho_{\psi_N}^{5/3} - \frac{CN}{\varepsilon}.$$



We still don't know what  $\rho_{\psi_N}$  is, but now everything is stated in terms of it, so we can minimize over it. For  $b > 0$ , write

$$\frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} = \left( \frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b \right) + b.$$

From minimizing over  $\rho$  (set  $\frac{\delta}{\delta \rho(x)} = 0 \dots$ ), one has that

$$C(1-\varepsilon)\frac{5}{3}\rho(x)^{2/3} = Z\left(\frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b\right),$$

and therefore that our minimum is

$$\rho(x) = \frac{C}{(1-\varepsilon)^{3/2}} Z^{3/2} \left( \frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b \right)_+^{3/2},$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi_N, H\psi_N) &\geq (15.6) \\ &\geq -\frac{CN}{\varepsilon} + C(1-\varepsilon) \int \rho^{5/3} - Z \int \left( \frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b \right) \rho \\ (15.7) \quad &\geq -\frac{CN}{\varepsilon} - \frac{CZ^{5/3}}{(1-\varepsilon)^{3/2}} \int \left[ \frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b \right]_+^{5/2} dx. \end{aligned}$$

Next, observe

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathcal{D}(x) - b]_+^{5/2} &= \max_j \left[ \frac{1}{|x - R_j|} - b \right]_+^{5/2} \\ &\leq \sum_{j=1}^M \left[ \frac{1}{|x - R_j|} - b \right]_+^{5/2}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}^3} \left[ \frac{1}{\mathcal{D}(x)} - b \right]_+^{5/2} dx \leq M \int_{|x| \leq 1/b} \left( \frac{1}{|x|} - b \right)_+^{5/2} dx = CMb^{-1/2}.$$

To see this, for each  $j$ , set  $R_j = 0$ , so  $1/|x| - b \geq 0$ , and therefore  $|x| \leq 1/b$ .

Next, optimize over  $b$ . The optimal value will satisfy

$$bN \sim \frac{M}{(1-\varepsilon)^{3/2}} b^{-1/2},$$

i.e.

$$b \sim \frac{1}{1-\varepsilon} \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{2/3}.$$

We've now reduced to

$$\begin{aligned} (\psi_N, H\psi_N) &\geq (15.7) \\ (15.8) \quad &\geq -\frac{1}{\varepsilon} CN - \frac{C}{1-\varepsilon} N \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{2/3}. \end{aligned}$$

Now we optimize for  $\varepsilon$ , ending up with

$$\frac{1}{\varepsilon} N \sim \frac{1}{1-\varepsilon} N \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{2/3},$$

i.e.

$$\frac{1}{\varepsilon} \sim 1 + \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{2/3}.$$

Now, we can finally conclude stability of matter:

$$(\psi_N, H\psi_N) \geq (15.8) \geq -CN \left( 1 + \left( \frac{M}{N} \right)^{2/3} \right) \geq -C(N + M)$$

by Young's inequality, as we discussed earlier.  $\square$

This is typical of the kinds of analysis proofs in this kind of mathematical physics: the arguments don't use extremely fancy math *per se*, but physics intuition is essential in showing us the way. For example, in this case, it led us to Voronoi cells.

Lecture 16.

### Introduction to quantum field theory and Fock space: 10/24/17

Today, we move into quantum field theory: we'll start with tensor products, then move into Fock space and creation and annihilation operators, and use them to restate many-body quantum mechanics (second quantization). From there we move to other simple examples and further topics.

**Fock spaces** The quantum-mechanical systems we've so far considered have Hilbert spaces which depend on the number of particles present in the system. Particles can be created and annihilated (though this requires, resp. produces energy), so it would be useful to have a Hilbert space of states which does not fix the number of particles. This is what Fock spaces accomplish.

In order to understand Fock spaces, one must understand tensor products. Let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$  be Hilbert spaces, say corresponding to two particles in a quantum-mechanical system. We want a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$  which encodes the states of both particles.

**Definition 16.1.** Let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$  be Hilbert spaces. For any  $\varphi_1 \in \mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\varphi_2 \in \mathcal{H}_2$ , let  $\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2: \mathcal{H}_1 \times \mathcal{H}_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  denote the conjugate bilinear form

$$\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2(f_1, f_2) = (\varphi_1, f_1)_{\mathcal{H}_1} (\varphi_2, f_2)_{\mathcal{H}_2}.$$

Bilinearity means that

$$(\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2)(f_1 + g, f_2) = (\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2)(f_1, f_2) + (\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2)(g, f_2),$$

and similarly for arguments of the form  $(f_1, f_2 + g)$ .

Let  $\mathcal{E}$  denote the space of finite linear combinations of the forms  $\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2$  for  $\varphi_i \in \mathcal{H}_i$ . It has an inner product, defined as the linear extension of the form

$$(16.2) \quad (\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2, \psi_1 \otimes \psi_2)_{\mathcal{E}} := (\varphi_1, \psi_1)_{\mathcal{H}_1} (\varphi_2, \psi_2)_{\mathcal{H}_2}$$

(one must check it is well-defined and positive-definite). Then, the *tensor product* of  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$ , denoted  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$ , is the completion of  $\mathcal{E}$  with respect to its inner product.

**Proposition 16.3.** If  $\{\varphi_j\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\{\psi_i\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathcal{H}_2$ , then  $\{\varphi_j \otimes \psi_i\}_{i,j}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$ .

**Example 16.4.** Let  $\mathcal{H}_1 = \mathbb{R}^2$ , with coordinates  $(a_1, a_2)$ , and  $\mathcal{H}_2 = \mathbb{R}^3$ , with coordinates  $(b_1, b_2, b_3)$ . Then,  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2 \cong \mathbb{R}^6$ , with coordinates  $(a_1b_1, a_1b_2, a_1b_3, a_2b_1, a_2b_2, a_2b_3)$ .  $\blacktriangleleft$

If  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$  are  $L^2$ -spaces, we can identify  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$  as something somewhat more concrete. Let  $(M_1, d\mu_1)$  and  $(M_2, d\mu_2)$  be measure spaces such that  $L^2(M_1, d\mu_1)$  and  $L^2(M_2, d\mu_2)$  are both separable, with orthonormal bases  $\{\varphi_i(x)\}$ , resp.  $\{\psi_j(y)\}$ . By Proposition 16.3,  $\{\varphi_i(x)\psi_j(y)\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $L^2(M_1 \times M_2, d\mu_1 \otimes d\mu_2)$  (the product measure).

**Theorem 16.5.** Let  $U: L^2(M_1, d\mu_1) \otimes L^2(M_2, d\mu_2) \rightarrow L^2(M_1 \times M_2, d\mu_1 \otimes d\mu_2)$  denote the map extending linearly from

$$\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2 \mapsto \varphi_1(x)\varphi_2(y).$$

Then,  $U$  is a unitary isomorphism.

That is, up to isomorphism of complex Hilbert spaces, the tensor product of  $L^2(M_1, d\mu_1)$  and  $L^2(M_2, d\mu_2)$  is the space of  $L^2$  functions on the product measure space (assuming separability).

One can prove that the tensor product is associative up to unitary isomorphism, and therefore uniquely define higher-order tensor products, such as  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2 \otimes \mathcal{H}_3$ . We will let  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}$  denote the  $n$ -fold tensor product of  $\mathcal{H}$ :

$$\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n} := \underbrace{\mathcal{H} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{H}}_{n \text{ times}}.$$

The notation  $\otimes$  for tensor product reflects that its inner product (16.2) is the product of the two individual inner products. There is a corresponding notion for adding inner products, which is denoted  $\oplus$ .

**Definition 16.6.** Let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  and  $\mathcal{H}_2$  be Hilbert spaces. Its *direct sum*  $\mathcal{H}_1 \oplus \mathcal{H}_2$  is the space of pairs  $(\varphi_1, \varphi_2)$  with  $\varphi_i \in \mathcal{H}_i$ , together with the inner product

$$((\varphi_1, \varphi_2), (\psi_1, \psi_2)) = (\varphi_1, \psi_1)_{\mathcal{H}_1} + (\varphi_2, \psi_2)_{\mathcal{H}_2}.$$

Unlike for the tensor product, there is no need to complete. As with tensor product, this is associative up to isomorphism, so we may define triple and higher-order direct sums.

We now have the ingredients we need to define Fock spaces.

**Definition 16.7.** Let  $\mathcal{H}$  be a Hilbert space. Then, *Fock space* over  $\mathcal{H}$  is

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H}) := \bigoplus_{n=1}^{\infty} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes n},$$

where we set  $\mathcal{H}^0 := \mathbb{C}$ .

We'll place an inner product on this space in just a moment.

**Example 16.8.** Suppose  $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^m)$ , so if  $\varphi \in \mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}$ , we may regard  $\varphi$  as an  $L^2$  function of  $n$  arguments, with each argument in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H})$  is the space of functions

$$(16.9) \quad \Phi = (\lambda, \varphi_1(x), \varphi_2(x_1, x_2), \varphi_3(x_1, x_2, x_3), \dots). \quad \blacktriangleleft$$

The inner product on  $\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H})$  is defined as follows: suppose  $\Phi$  and  $\Psi$  are defined as in (16.9). Then,

$$(\Phi, \Psi)_{\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H})} := \bar{\varphi}_0 \psi_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (\varphi_n, \psi_n)_{\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}}.$$

*Remark. TODO:* in algebra, the infinite direct sum consists of tuples for which only finitely many are nonzero, but this space isn't complete under the above inner product. Do we take the completion of that space under the inner product, or consider tuples with potentially infinite nonzero elements such that the inner product converges?<sup>17</sup>  $\blacktriangleleft$

**Lemma 16.10.** If  $\mathcal{H}$  is separable, so is  $\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H})$ .

In physics, there are two particularly relevant subspaces: the symmetric tensors (for bosons) and the antisymmetric operators (for fermions). Let  $S_n$  denote the symmetric group on  $n$  letters, i.e. the group of automorphisms of the set  $\{1, \dots, n\}$ . This acts on  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}$ : if  $\sigma \in S_n$ , let

$$\sigma(\varphi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \varphi_n) := \varphi_{\sigma(1)} \otimes \cdots \otimes \varphi_{\sigma(n)}.$$

Define

$$\text{Sym}_n := \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \sigma,$$

e.g.

$$\text{Sym}_2((\varphi_1 \otimes \varphi_2))(x, y) = \frac{1}{2}(\varphi_1(x)\varphi_2(y) + \varphi_2(x)\varphi_1(y)).$$

One can check that  $\text{Sym}^n$  is an orthonormal projection by verifying that

$$(\text{Sym}_n \varphi, \psi)_{\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}} = (\varphi_n, \text{Sym}^n \psi_n)_{\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n}}$$

and  $\text{Sym}_n \circ \text{Sym}_n = \text{Sym}_n$ ; its range is called the  $n$ -fold symmetric tensor product of  $\mathcal{H}$ , denoted  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n} := \text{Sym}_n \mathcal{H}_n$ .

<sup>17</sup>Less concerning but still interesting:  $\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H})$  has an algebra structure. Is this used at all in physics?

**Definition 16.11.** The *symmetric Fock space* or *bosonic Fock space* is

$$\mathcal{F}_s(\mathcal{H}) := \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s n}.$$

The fermionic story is the same: there is an *antisymmetrization operator*

$$\text{Alt}_n := \frac{1}{n!} \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} (-1)^{\text{sign}(\sigma)} \sigma,$$

which is again an orthonormal projection. Its range is called the *alternating tensor product* of  $\mathcal{H}$  and denoted  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes_a n}$ .

**Definition 16.12.** The *antisymmetric Fock space* or *fermionic Fock space* is

$$\mathcal{F}_a(\mathcal{H}) := \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes_a n}.$$

*Remark.* Suppose  $\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , corresponding to particles moving in  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . Then,  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s n}$  is isomorphic to the space of  $L^2$  functions  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  in  $n$  variables on  $\mathbb{R}^d$  that are symmetric, i.e.  $f(x_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, x_{\sigma(n)}) = f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  for all  $\sigma \in S_n$ . We previously studied this space, and called it  $L^2_{\text{sym}}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , exactly the Hilbert space for a system of  $n$  bosons. In this way, the bosonic Fock space is the direct sum of the  $n$ -boson Hilbert spaces for all  $n$ . The same analysis applies to fermionic Fock space and  $n$ -fermion systems. ◀

The physical interpretation of a  $\Psi \in \mathcal{F}_s(\mathcal{H})$  is a generalized wavefunction: if  $\Psi = (\varphi_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$  and  $\|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s(\mathcal{H})}$  is normalized to 1, then

$$\|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s(\mathcal{H})}^2 = \sum_{n \geq 0} \|\varphi_n\|_{L^2_{\text{sym}}(\mathbb{R}^{nd})}^2 = 1,$$

so we interpret  $\Psi$  as a state of the quantum system where the probability that there are  $n$  particles is  $\|\varphi_n\|^2$ , and the probability density function for particles being in positions  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ , given that the particle number is  $n$ , is  $|\varphi_n(x_1, \dots, x_n)|^2$ . The analogous description applies for fermionic wavefunctions.

To study the dynamics of such a system, we introduce a Hamiltonian  $H$ , a self-adjoint, bounded-below operator, and the Schrödinger equation

$$(16.13) \quad i\partial_t \Psi = H\Psi,$$

and initial data of a  $\Psi(t=0) \in \mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d))$ .

Suppose that  $H$  preserves the particle number (maps  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s n}$  to itself). This physically means particles are neither created nor destroyed, and to understand the dynamics of the system, there's no need to introduce Fock space at all. However, there are interesting theories in which the particle number is not preserved over time, corresponding to maps on  $\mathcal{F}_s(\mathcal{H})$  or  $\mathcal{F}_a(\mathcal{H})$  which don't preserve the grading. There's an extremely elegant description of the algebra of these maps in terms of creation and annihilation operators, which we will use.

*Remark.* The zeroth graded piece  $\mathcal{H}^0 = \mathbb{C}$  is called the *vacuum sector*. Its states are all in phase, so there's just one equivalence class of states  $\Omega = (1, 0, 0, \dots)$ , called the *Fock vacuum*.

We're used to thinking of the vacuum as the absence of particles, and indeed this vacuum state is for the zero-particle system. But just because there is nothing does not mean there isn't something else. For example, in the Fermi sea, all fermions are close together, and adding energy can pop one fermion out into the rest of the world. It leaves behind a hole — regarded as an antiparticle — and one can envision the Fermi sea as the Fock vacuum, and the popped-out fermion as producing a one-particle state. In this way there can be more than one way to think about the vacuum. ◀

**Definition 16.14.** Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$  (i.e. a Schwartz class operator).

- Define the *creation operator*  $a^*(f): \mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d))$  to send

$$(16.15a) \quad \varphi_n \mapsto \sqrt{n+1} \text{Sym}_{n+1}(f \otimes \varphi_n).$$

This increases the grading by 1, in that it maps  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s n}$  to  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s(n+1)}$ .

- Define the *annihilation operator*  $a(f): \mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d))$  to send<sup>18</sup>

$$(16.15b) \quad \varphi_n(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto \sqrt{n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} \bar{f}(x_n) \varphi_n(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n) dx_n.$$

This decreases the grading by 1, in that for  $n \geq 1$  it sends  $\mathcal{H}^{\otimes n} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^{\otimes (n-1)}$ , and the Fock vacuum is destroyed: any  $\lambda \in \mathcal{H}^0$  is sent to 0.

Another way to say this is:  $a(f)\Omega = 0$  for all  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

Next time, we'll talk more about these operators and how to use them to express dynamics.

Lecture 17.

### Creation and annihilation operators: 10/26/17

Recall that we introduced Fock space to study many-particle systems where the particle number is not a conserved quantity. Concretely,  $\mathcal{F}_s^{(n)}(\mathcal{H}) := \text{Sym}^n \mathcal{H}$  (or the alternating power for fermionic Fock space), and Fock space is the Hilbert space

$$\mathcal{F}_s(L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)) := \left\{ \Psi := (\psi_n \in \mathcal{F}_s^{(n)})_{n \geq 0} \mid \|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}}^2 := |\psi_0|^2 + \sum_{n \geq 1} \|\psi_n\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{nd})}^2 < \infty \right\}.$$

So unlike the purely algebraic tensor, symmetric, or exterior algebras, an element of Fock space may be nonzero in infinitely many degrees. But the finiteness of the Fock norm means that for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there's an  $N(\varepsilon, \Psi)$  such that

$$\sum_{n > N(\varepsilon, \Psi)} \|\psi_n\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{nd})}^2 < \varepsilon.$$

Thus arbitrary elements of Fock space can be arbitrarily well approximated by finite sums of homogeneous elements.

We then defined the creation and annihilation operators (16.15a) and (16.15b), respectively. For an  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ , the creation operator  $a^*(f)$  physically represents adding a particle with wavefunction  $f$ .<sup>19</sup> The annihilation  $a(f)$  removes a particle with wavefunction  $f$  if it exists (integrating it out, so to speak).

#### Theorem 17.1.

- (1)  $a^*(f)$  and  $a(f)$  are adjoints:  $(a^*(f)\Psi, \Phi)_{\mathcal{F}_s} = (\Psi, a(f)\Phi)_{\mathcal{F}_s}$ .
- (2) The creation and annihilation operators satisfy the canonical commutation relations<sup>20</sup> for any  $f, g \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ :

$$(17.2a) \quad [a(f), a(g)] = 0$$

$$(17.2b) \quad [a^*(f), a^*(g)] = 0$$

$$(17.2c) \quad [a(f), a^*(g)] = (f, g)_{L^2}.$$

- (3) For any  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ ,  $a(f)\Omega = 0$ , where  $\Omega := (1, 0, \dots)$  is the Fock vacuum.

*Partial proof.* We prove (17.2c). First we compute  $a(f)a^*(g)\phi_n$ .

If  $\phi_n$  is symmetric, then the symmetrization  $\text{Sym}_{n+1}(g \otimes \phi_n)$  simplifies considerably:

$$\text{Sym}_{n+1}(g \otimes \phi_n) = \frac{1}{n+1} (g(x_1)\phi_n(x_2, \dots, x_{n+1}) + \dots + g(x_{n+1})\phi_n(x_1, \dots, x_n)),$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} a(f)a^*(g)\phi_n &= a(f)\sqrt{n+1} \frac{1}{n+1} (g(x_1)\phi_n(x_2, \dots, x_{n+1}) + \dots + g(x_{n+1})\phi_n(x_1, \dots, x_n)) \\ &= \frac{n+1}{n+1} (g(x_1)((f, \phi_n))(x_2, \dots, x_n) + \dots + g(x_n)((f, \phi_n)_{L^2})(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}) + (f, g)_{L^2}\phi_n). \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

<sup>18</sup>Since  $\varphi$  is symmetric, the choice of  $n$  in  $\overline{f(x_n)}$  is not important.

<sup>19</sup>**TODO:** not 100% sure this is right.

<sup>20</sup>For fermionic Fock space, these are *anticommutation* relations.

In the same way,

$$\begin{aligned} a^*(g)a(f)\phi_n &= a^*(g)\sqrt{n} \underbrace{((f, \phi_n))}_{\text{symmetric}} \\ &= \frac{n}{n} (g(x_1)((f, \phi_n))(x_2, \dots, x_n) + \dots + g(x_n)((f, \phi_n)_{L^2})(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1})). \end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $[a(f), a^*(g)] = (f, g)_{L^2} \phi_n$ .  $\square$

**Exercise 17.3.** Prove the rest of the identities.

Notice that  $a^*(f)$  is linear in  $f$ , but  $a(f)$  is conjugate linear in  $f$ . This implies the existence of operator-valued distributions  $a$  and  $a^*$  such that

$$(17.4) \quad \begin{aligned} a^*(f) &= \int dx f(x) a_x^* \\ a(f) &= \int dx \overline{f(x)} a_x^*, \end{aligned}$$

and these satisfy the commutation relationships

$$\begin{aligned} [a_x, a_y] &= 0 \\ [a_x^*, a_y^*] &= 0 \\ [a_x, a_y^*] &= \delta(x - y). \end{aligned}$$

*Remark.* By “operator-valued distribution” we mean something which takes a test function and produces an operator. This means the integrals above aren’t actually integrals, but instead the definition of the evaluation pairing of operators on functions. For example, the *Dirac delta distribution*  $\delta: \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  sends  $\phi \mapsto \phi(0)$ , and one writes

$$\int \phi(x) \delta(x) dx = \phi(0),$$

even though there is no function  $\delta(x)$  for which this is literally true. The integrals in (17.4) are to be interpreted in the same way, as evaluation of a distribution.  $\triangleleft$

Let  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  be Schwartz-class. Then,

$$\begin{aligned} a^*(f_n)\Omega &= (a^*(f_n)1, 0, 0, \dots) \\ &= (0, f_n(x), 0, 0, \dots). \end{aligned}$$

More generally,

$$(17.5) \quad a^*(f_1) \cdots a^*(f_n)\Omega = (0, \dots, 0, \sqrt{n!} \text{Sym}_n(f_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes f_n), 0, 0, \dots).$$

These span all elements of Fock space with only finitely many terms, which is a dense subset. Hence any bounded linear operator can be understood in terms of its behavior on elements of the form (17.5). In this sense,  $a_x$  and  $a_x^*$  are building blocks of operators that act on Fock space. Here’s an example/

**Definition 17.6.** The *number operator*

$$\mathcal{N} := \int a_x^* a_x dx: \mathcal{F}_s \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}_s.$$

Explicitly,

$$\mathcal{N}(\psi_0, \psi_1, \dots) = (0 \cdot \psi_0, 1 \cdot \psi_1, 2 \cdot \psi_2, \dots).$$

**Lemma 17.7.**  $\mathcal{N}a^*(f) = a^*(f)(\mathcal{N} + 1)$ .

*Proof.* The proof can be abstracted away into the commutation relations:

$$\begin{aligned} \int a_x^* a_x dx \int a_y^* f(y) dy &= \int dx dy a_x^* (a_y^* a_x + \delta(x - y)) f(y) \\ &= \underbrace{\int dy a_y^* f(y)}_{a^*(f)} \underbrace{\int dx a_x^* a_x}_{\mathcal{N}} + \underbrace{\int dx a_x^* f(x)}_{a^*(f)}. \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{N}a^*(f_1)\cdots a^*(f_n)\Omega &= a^*(f_1)(\mathcal{N}+1)a^*(f_2)\cdots a^*(f_n)(\Omega) \\ &= a^*(f_1)\cdots a^*(f_n)(\mathcal{N}+n)(\Omega).\end{aligned}$$

This feels non-rigorous, but can be made so, e.g. working with an orthonormal basis of  $L^2$ . This is done more carefully in Folland's tourist guide to quantum field theory, or in Glimm-Jaffe, Streater, or Yost's quantum mechanics book. But the proofs are not easy reading.

The reason  $\mathcal{N}$  is called the number operator is because of its expectation values:

$$\langle \mathcal{N} \rangle_\Psi = \langle \Psi, \mathcal{N}\Psi \rangle = 0 \cdot |\psi_0|^2 + \sum_{n \geq 1} n \|\psi_n\|_{L^2(\mathbb{R}^{nd})}^2$$

when  $\|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}} = 1$ . This is the expected value of the number of particles present in the system in state  $\Psi$ , a useful physical quantity.

*Remark.* One place the number operator is important is gauge theory with a massless gauge particle. Low-frequency particles (said to be in the *infrared*) are created with some energy  $E = mc^2$  (where  $c$  is the speed of light and  $m$  is the mass of the particle). But in a massless, interacting system, it costs no energy to create massless particles. In certain cases, this means that it's "too easy" to create too many particles, so  $\langle \mathcal{N} \rangle_\Psi$  is divergent! This is a signal that Fock space is not the right approach for this theory, and one must use other methods (e.g.  $C^*$ -theoretic ones). This issue is likely to also happen in theories of gravitons, which also have no mass.

The number operator also appears when considering the dynamics of the Schrödinger equation on Fock space. ◀

### Operators acting on Fock space.

**Definition 17.8.** Let  $\mathcal{H}_i$  be Hilbert spaces,  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , and consider linear operators  $A_i: \mathcal{H}_i \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_i$ . Define the *tensor product* of these operators to be the operator

$$\begin{aligned}A_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes A_n: \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{H}_n &\longrightarrow \mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathcal{H}_n \\ \phi_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes \phi_n &\longmapsto (A_1\phi_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes (A_n\phi_n).\end{aligned}$$

One can define the *direct sum* of these operators in the same way:

$$\begin{aligned}A_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus A_n: \mathcal{H}_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathcal{H}_n &\longrightarrow \mathcal{H}_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus \mathcal{H}_n \\ \phi_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus \phi_n &\longmapsto ((A_1\phi_1), \dots, (A_n\phi_n)).\end{aligned}$$

**Example 17.9.** The *kinetic energy* operator on  $\mathcal{F}_s^{(n)} = (L^2(\mathbb{R}^d))^{\otimes_s n}$  is

$$T_n := \sum_{j=1}^n \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes (-\Delta_{x_j}) \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1},$$

i.e. the sum over  $j$  of Laplacians acting only on the  $j^{\text{th}}$  entry. Thus, if  $\psi \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^{nd})$ ,

$$T_n \psi_n = \sum_{j=1}^n (-\Delta_{x_j} \psi_n)(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

on  $\mathcal{F}_s^{(n)}$ . On the entire Fock space, we define

$$T := (0, T_1, T_2, \dots),$$

the direct sum of the operators on each component. ◀

*Remark.* There's a notion of *second quantization*  $\Gamma_s$  (symmetric) or  $\Gamma_a$  (antisymmetric) which does this all at once, so to speak: to a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$  one assigns

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma_s(\mathcal{H}) &:= \mathbb{C} \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes_s n} \\ \Gamma_a(\mathcal{H}) &:= \mathbb{C} \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes_a n},\end{aligned}$$

and for any linear operator (bounded or not)  $h: \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$ , one assigns (for either the symmetric or antisymmetric case)

$$\begin{aligned} d\Gamma(h) &:= \left. \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right|_{t=0} \Gamma(e^{th}) \\ &= 0 \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \sum_{j=1}^n \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \underset{j^{\text{th}} \text{ slot}}{h} \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1}. \end{aligned}$$

These actually define functors: if  $\text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}}$  denote the category whose objects are complex Hilbert spaces and whose morphisms are linear maps,<sup>22</sup> second quantization  $\Gamma_s, \Gamma_a: \text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}} \Rightarrow \text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}}$  are functors. This led to the quote that “first quantization is a miracle, but second quantization is a functor.” ◀

As an example,  $T = d\Gamma_s(-\Delta)$ , which is a more compact way of defining it.

Like everything else, second quantization can be described in terms of creation and annihilation operators.

**Proposition 17.10.** *Let  $h: L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  be a multiplication operator, i.e.  $h(f) := f(x)h(x)$  for some  $h(x) \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Then,*

$$d\Gamma(h) = \int dx a_x^* h(x) a_x.$$

*Proof.* We just calculate:

$$\begin{aligned} d\Gamma(h)a^*(f) &= \int dx a_x^* h(x) a_x \int dy f(y) a y^* \\ &= \int dx dy h(x) a_x^* (a_y^* a_x + \delta(x-y)) f(y) \\ &= \int dy f(y) a_y^* \int dx h(x) a_x^* a_x + \int a_x^* h(x) f(x) dx \\ &= a^*(f) d\Gamma(h) + a^*(hf). \end{aligned}$$

Thus (using the fact that  $d\Gamma(h)\Omega = 0$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} d\Gamma(h)a^*(f_1) \cdots a^*(f_n)\Omega &= \sum_{j=1}^n a^*(f_1) \cdots a^*(f_{j-1}) a^*(hf_j) a^*(f_{j+1}) \cdots a^*(f_n)\Omega \\ &= \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes h \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1} \right) \sqrt{n!} \text{Sym}_n f_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes f_n. \end{aligned}$$

◻

Lecture 18.

## Second quantization: 10/31/17

Last time, we discussed second quantization as a functor  $\Gamma_s: \text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow \text{Hilb}_{\mathbb{C}}$ .<sup>23</sup> To a Hilbert space  $\mathcal{H}$ ,  $\Gamma$  assigns

$$\mathcal{H} \mapsto \mathbb{C} \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \mathcal{H}^{\otimes n},$$

and to an operator  $h: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ ,  $\Gamma$  assigns

$$d\Gamma: h \mapsto 0 \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \sum_{j=1}^n \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes h \otimes \mathbf{1} \otimes \cdots \otimes \mathbf{1},$$

where  $h$  is in the  $j^{\text{th}}$  slot.

<sup>22</sup>We do not require linear maps to be bounded, and in particular the Laplacian on  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  isn't.

<sup>23</sup>This is the bosonic case (symmetric Fock space); the fermionic (antisymmetric) case is analogous, with  $\otimes_s$  replaced with  $\otimes_a$ .



We then sketched a proof of Proposition 17.10, characterizing  $d\Gamma(h)$  when  $h: L^2(\mathbb{R}^d) \rightarrow L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$  is multiplication by some  $h \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ .

We also defined the number operator  $\mathcal{N} = \int a_x^* a_x dx$  (as an operator-valued distribution — this isn't a literal integral). There's a reason for its name: it counts the expected number of particles. We saw that from the perspective of Fock space, but there's a more hands-on reason.

Let  $\delta_{x,\varepsilon}$  be an  $L^1$  approximation to the identity at  $x$ , meaning its support is contained within a ball of radius  $O(\varepsilon)$  and its maximum value is  $O(1/\varepsilon^d)$ . Interpreted as a wavefunction, this represents a particle contained within that disc of radius  $O(\varepsilon)$ , and  $a^*(\delta_{x,\varepsilon}^{1/2}) \in L^2$ .

Now tile  $\mathbb{R}^d$  with boxes of side length  $\varepsilon$ , and let  $Q_i^\varepsilon(x)$  be the value of the wavefunction in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  box. This is the input for calculating the expected number of particles to be found in this box, so the total expected number of particles<sup>24</sup> is

$$\sum_i a_i(Q_i^\varepsilon) a_i^*(Q_i^\varepsilon),$$

and as we refine the boxes, we take  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$  and obtain the integral  $\int a_x^* a_x dx$ .

We can set this theory up just as well on momentum space: using the Fourier transform on distributions,

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{a}_\xi &:= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{d/2}} \int a_x e^{-i\xi x} dx \\ \widehat{a}_\xi^* &:= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{d/2}} \int a_x^* e^{-i\xi x} dx.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the Fourier-transformed number operator is, by the Plancherel lemma,

$$\mathcal{N} = \int \widehat{a}_\xi^* \widehat{a}_\xi d\xi,$$

and we also have a nice form for the second quantization of the Laplacian:

$$d\Gamma(-\Delta) = \int \widehat{a}_\xi^* \xi^2 \widehat{a}_\xi d\xi.$$

This uses the fact that

$$a(f) = \int \widehat{a}_\xi \widehat{f}(\xi) d\xi$$

and similarly for  $a^*(f)$ .

**The spectrum of the second quantization.** We want to understand the relationship between the spectrum of an operator  $h$  and the spectrum of its second quantization  $d\Gamma(h)$ .

**Lemma 18.1.** Assume  $A_i: \mathcal{H}_i \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_i$  for  $i = 1, 2$  are self-adjoint operators, and consider  $A := A_1 \otimes \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{1} \otimes A_2$  as an operator on  $\mathcal{H}_1 \otimes \mathcal{H}_2$ . Then,

$$\sigma(A) = \sigma(A_1) + \sigma(A_2) := \{\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 \mid \lambda_1 \in \sigma(A_1), \lambda_2 \in \sigma(A_2)\}.$$

This is called the *sumset* of  $\sigma(A_1)$  and  $\sigma(A_2)$ .

**Corollary 18.2.** With notation as above,

- $\sigma_d(A) = \sigma_d(A_1) + \sigma_d(A_2)$ .
- $\sigma_{\text{ess}}(A) = (\sigma_{\text{ess}}(A_1) + \sigma_{\text{ess}}(A_2)) \cup (\sigma_d(A_1) + \sigma_{\text{ess}}(A_2)) \cup (\sigma_{\text{ess}}(A_1) + \sigma_d(A_2))$ .

In particular, one has  $\sigma(d\Gamma(-\Delta)) = \mathbb{R}_+$ . This is a little frustrating, but it is possible to control the spectrum of the operator acting on purely  $n$ -particle states for a fixed  $n$ .

We're going to try to bound the creation and annihilation operators. At least in the bosonic case, they're unbounded! But one can try to work instead with relative bounds, so bounded with respect to some other operator in a useful way.

**Definition 18.3.** Let  $A: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$  be a self-adjoint operator.

- Its operator domain is

$$\text{Dom}(A) := \{\psi \in \mathcal{H} \mid \|A\psi\|_{\mathcal{H}} < \infty\}.$$

<sup>24</sup>**TODO:** is it accurate to say this is by linearity of expectation?

- Its quadratic form domain is

$$\text{QD}(A) := \{\psi \in \mathcal{H} \mid (\psi, A\psi) > 0\} = D(|A|^{1/2}).$$

Here's an example of a relative bound.

**Lemma 18.4.** Assume  $\psi \in \text{QD}(\mathcal{N})$  (i.e.  $\|\mathcal{N}^{1/2}\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}$  is finite). Then,

$$\|a(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \leq \|f\|_{L^2} \|\mathcal{N}^{1/2}\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}$$

and

$$\|a^*(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \leq \|f\|_{L^2} (1 + \|\mathcal{N}^{1/2}\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}).$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \|a(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}^2 &= (a(f)\psi, a(f)\psi)_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &= \int dx dy f(x) \overline{f(y)} (a_x \psi, a_y \psi)_{\mathcal{F}_s}. \end{aligned}$$

By the Cauchy-Schwarz theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} &\leq \int dx dy |f(x)| |f(y)| \|a_x \psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \|a_y \psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &\leq \left( \left( \int dx dy |f(x)|^2 \|a_y \psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}^2 \right)^{1/2} \right)^2. \end{aligned}$$

Again, by Cauchy-Schwarz,

$$\begin{aligned} &= \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \int dy (a_y \psi, a_y \psi) \\ &= \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \int dy (\psi, a_y^* a_y \psi) \\ &= \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \int dy (\psi, \mathcal{N} \psi). \end{aligned}$$

The proof for  $a^*$  is similar:

$$\begin{aligned} \|a^*(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s}^2 &= (a^*(f)\psi, a^*(f)\psi)_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &= \int dx dy f(x) \overline{f(y)} (\psi, a_x a_y^* \psi)_{\mathcal{F}_s}. \end{aligned}$$

Using the canonical commutation relations,

$$= \int dy dy f(x) \overline{f(y)} (\delta(x-y)(\psi, \psi) + (a_y \psi, a_x \psi)).$$

By Cauchy-Schwarz,

$$\leq \int dx dy |f(x)| |f(y)| \|a_x \psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \|a_y \psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} + \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \|\psi\|^2.$$

From here, the rest of the proof is the same as for  $a$ . \(\square\)

In quantum field theory, we're generally interested in states with finite kinetic energy; hence, if  $T := d\Gamma(-\Delta)$ , we consider  $\psi \in \text{QD}(T)$ . We also have an explicit description of  $T$  as

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \int d\xi \hat{a}_\xi^* \xi^2 \hat{a}_\xi \\ &= \int dx a_x^* (-\Delta_x a_x) \\ &= dx (\nabla_x a_x^*) (\nabla_x a_x). \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 18.5.** Suppose  $\psi \in \text{QD}(T)$ . Then,

$$\|a(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \leq \left\| \frac{\hat{f}}{|\xi|} \right\|_{L^2} \|T^{1/2}\psi\|_{L^2}$$

and

$$\|a^*(f)\psi\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \leq \left( \left\| \frac{\hat{f}}{|\xi|} \right\|_{L^2} \|T^{1/2}\psi\| + \|f\|_{L^2}^2 \|\psi\|_{L^2}^2 \right)^{1/2}.^{25}$$

The proof was left as an exercise.

We next look at some operators which are extremely useful in physics for describing ground states of interacting systems (sometimes called coherent states).

**Definition 18.6.** Let  $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . Then, the Weyl operator associated to  $f$  is

$$W(f) := e^{a^*(f) - a(f)}.$$

The term in the exponent is anti-self-adjoint! But the Weyl operator as a whole is unitary.<sup>26</sup>

$$W^*(f)W(f) = 1.$$

The adjoint has the formula

$$W^*(f) = e^{a(f) - a^*(f)}.$$

In particular,

$$\|W(f)\|_{\mathcal{F}_s \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_s} = 1.$$

**Lemma 18.7.**

$$W(f) = e^{-(1/2)\|f\|_{L^2}^2} e^{a^*(f)} e^{-a(f)}.$$

*Proof.* The proof uses (a case of) the Campbell-Baker-Hausdorff formula for the exponential of a sum of operators: if  $[[A, B], A] = 0$  and  $[[A, B], B] = 0$ , then

$$e^{A+B} = e^{(1/2)[A,B]} e^A e^B.$$

Thus, plus the fact that  $[a(f), a^*(f)] = \|f\|_{L^2}^2$ , finishes the proof.  $\square$

If you apply  $W(f)$  to the Fock vacuum  $\Omega$ , any terms corresponding to  $a(f)$  are zero, so in fact the whole  $e^{-a(f)}$  term does not contribute:  $e^{-a(f)}\Omega = \Omega$ .

$$\begin{aligned} W(f)\Omega &= e^{-(1/2)\|f\|_{L^2}^2} e^{a^*(f)}\Omega \\ &= e^{-(1/2)\|f\|_{L^2}^2} \left( 1 \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \frac{(a^*(f))^n}{n!} \right) \Omega \\ &= e^{-(1/2)\|f\|_{L^2}^2} \left( 1, f, \frac{1}{2}f \otimes f, \frac{1}{6}f \otimes f \otimes f, \dots \right). \end{aligned}$$

<sup>26</sup>This crucially uses the fact that  $f$  is  $L^2$ . However, in physics, this is not always the case: for quantum electrodynamics (QED), the physical theory of electromagnetism, or more generally in Lorentz-invariant theories with massless gauge fields, one must consider non- $L^2$  functions. This is because  $\hat{f}(\xi) \sim 1/\sqrt{|\xi|}$  in  $d = 3$  (and similarly, with a different power, in higher dimensions). This arises when one considers a wave in Minkowski space (a Poincaré-invariant vector field), and integrates out the frequency coordinate using a contour integral, which produces  $d\xi/\sqrt{|\xi|}$ , which is Lorentz-invariant. So it's unavoidable. What we eventually obtain is  $1/|\xi|^{3/2}$ , which is not  $L^2$ .

Typically in physics, one introduces cutoffs, stipulating that  $|\xi| < \Lambda$  (called *ultraviolet cutoffs*). This is physically reasonable: high frequency is the same regime as high energy, and for sufficiently high energies the typical approximations don't necessarily apply, and one must incorporate additional terms. So with the caveat that we're only working with a range of physically relevant energies,  $L^2$  regularity can be restored.

But the singularity as  $|\xi| \rightarrow 0$  cannot be avoided — and so the Weyl operators are still not unitary. This is called the *infrared catastrophe*, and has the consequence that the ground state of a QED system does not live in Fock space! One has to work harder to make sense of the theory, and the Weyl operators are extremely important.

Since  $f = f$ , each component is already a symmetric tensor, and there is no need to symmetrize. This is an example of a *coherent state* — the  $n$ -particle piece is  $n$  copies of the same function, for all  $n$ .<sup>27</sup>

In the following, we use  $a^\sharp$  to denote either of  $a$  or  $a^*$ .

**Definition 18.8.** Let  $f \in \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^d)$ . The *Bogoliubov transformation* is the map sending

$$a_x^\sharp \longmapsto W^*(f)a_x^\sharp W(f).$$

**Lemma 18.9.**

$$W^*(f)a_x W(f) = a_x + f(x)$$

$$W^*(f)a_x^* W(f) = a_x^* + \overline{f(x)}.$$

There are a few ways to prove this: you can again use the Campbell-Baker-Hausdorff formula or Taylor-expand, or a few other techniques.

*Proof.* For a  $t \in \mathbb{R}$ , let  $a_x(t) := W^*(tf)a_x W(tf)$ , with  $W(tf) = e^{t(a^*(f)-a(f))}$ . Then,

$$\partial_t a_x(t) = W^*(tf) \underbrace{(-(a^*(f) - a(f))a_x + a_x(a^*(f) - a(f)))}_{(I)} W(f),$$

and the middle term is

$$(I) = [a_x, a^*(f) - a(f)] = [a_x, a^*(f)] = f(x),$$

which involves a sketchy-feeling computation with a  $\delta$ -function that's ultimately OK. Hence  $\partial_t a_x(t) = f(x)$ . Therefore  $a_x(t) = a_x(0) + tf(x)$ , so  $a_x(1) = a_x + f(x)$ .  $\square$

*Remark.* Coherent states describe, among other things, Bose-Einstein condensates, where there are many electrons in the same state in an interacting system.  $\blacktriangleleft$

Lecture 19.

### Bose-Einstein condensation: 11/2/17

*"When you have a divergence, it tells you that something infinite is missing."*

Recall that we defined the Weyl operator  $W(f) := e^{a^*(f)-a(f)}$  for an  $f \in L^2$ , and that  $W(f)\Omega \in \mathcal{F}_s$  is the coherent state. We'll use this, and the lemmas we proved about it last time, to learn about a simple physical model.

The *van Hove model* is one of the simplest interacting quantum field theories, with Hamiltonian

$$H = \int \widehat{a}_\xi^* \omega(\xi) \widehat{a}_\xi \, d\xi + a^*(v) + a(v),$$

which is an operator on  $\mathcal{F}_s$ , where  $\omega$  is positive definite. For instance, one could set  $\omega(\xi) := \xi^2$ , corresponding to non-relativistic massive particles, or  $\omega(\xi) := |\xi|$ , for photons.

We want to determine the ground state. We apply the Bogoliubov transform to  $H$ :

$$\begin{aligned} W\left(\frac{\widehat{v}}{w}\right) H W^*\left(\frac{\widehat{v}}{w}\right) &= \int \left( \widehat{a}_\xi^* - \frac{\overline{\widehat{v}(\xi)}}{\omega(\xi)} \right) \omega(\xi) \left( \widehat{a}_\xi - \frac{\widehat{v}(\xi)}{\omega(\xi)} \right) + \int \widehat{v}(\xi) \left( \widehat{a}_\xi^* - \frac{\overline{\widehat{v}(\xi)}}{\omega(\xi)} \right) d\xi + \int \overline{\widehat{v}} \left( \widehat{a}_\xi - \frac{\widehat{v}(\xi)}{\omega(\xi)} \right) \\ &= \underbrace{\int \widehat{a}_\xi^* \omega(\xi) \widehat{a}_\xi \, d\xi}_T - \underbrace{\int \frac{|\widehat{v}(\xi)|^2}{\omega(\xi)} \, d\xi}_{E_0}, \end{aligned}$$

and  $E_0 < 0$ . Thus the Bogoliubov transform diagonalizes the Hamiltonian, and describes it almost completely in terms of the operator

$$(T\psi)^{(n)}(\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n) = \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \omega(\xi_i) \widehat{\psi}^{(n)}(\xi_1, \dots, \xi_n) \right)_{n \geq 0}.$$

<sup>27</sup>This cannot happen for fermions, which is related to the Pauli exclusion principle, or the fact that  $f \wedge f = 0$ . In this case, one considers a different analogue of a coherent state, which is a notion of a determinant for  $n$  linearly independent functions.

Therefore

$$W\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right)HW^*\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right) = T + E_0.$$

Since  $T\Omega = 0$  and  $0 = \inf \text{Spec } T$ , then  $\Omega$  is a ground state for  $T$ , and therefore  $E_0$  is the energy of the ground state for  $H$ !

In particular,

$$W\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right)HW^*\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right)\Omega = E_0\Omega,$$

so

$$HW\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right)\Omega = E_0 \underbrace{W^*\left(\frac{\hat{v}}{w}\right)\Omega}_{\psi_0},$$

and the left-hand side is a coherent state.

Using the number operator, we can calculate the expected number of particles in the ground state.

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathcal{N} \rangle_{\psi_0} &= \left( W^*(\hat{f})\Omega, \mathcal{N}W^*(\hat{f})\Omega \right)_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &= \left( \Omega, W(\hat{f})\mathcal{N}W^*(\hat{f})\Omega \right)_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &= \left( \Omega, \int \left( \hat{a}_\xi^* - \overline{\hat{f}(\xi)} \right) \left( \hat{a}_\xi - \hat{f}(\xi) \right) d\xi \Omega \right)_{\mathcal{F}_s} \\ &= \left( \Omega, \underbrace{\int \hat{a}_\xi^* \hat{a}_\xi d\xi \Omega}_{\mathcal{N}} \right) - \underbrace{\left( \Omega, \left( \int \hat{a}_\xi^* \hat{f}(\xi) d\xi + \int \hat{a}_\xi \overline{\hat{f}(\xi)} d\xi \right) \Omega \right)}_{=0} + \underbrace{\int |\hat{f}(\xi)|^2 d\xi}_{=1} (\Omega, \Omega) \\ &= \|f\|_{L^2}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence we require  $\|\hat{v}/w\|_{L^2}$  to be finite, so that the expected number of particles is finite; if the expected number of particles is infinite, this formalism doesn't work, and there are interesting  $C^*$ -algebraic issues.

**Example 19.1.** In quantum electrodynamics (QED) in 3D with a UV cutoff,

$$\hat{v}(\xi) \sim \frac{1}{\sqrt{|\xi|}} \chi(|\xi| < \Lambda)$$

and  $\omega(\xi) = |\xi|$ . In this case,

$$\frac{\hat{v}}{|\xi|} \sim \frac{1}{|\xi|^{3/2}} \chi(|\xi| < \Lambda),$$

and

$$\left\| \frac{1}{|\xi|^{3/2}} \chi(|\xi| < \Lambda) \right\|_{L^2}^2 = \int_{|\xi| < \Lambda} \frac{1}{|\xi|^3} d\xi \longrightarrow \infty$$

and therefore one says this system is *IR divergent*: there is an issue with infinity at the low energies of the system.  $\blacktriangleleft$

We can also use Fock space to study (some) interacting quantum systems. The integrand of the number operator,  $a_x^* a_x$  physically speaking counts particles at  $x$ . So given a system with pair interactions (i.e. between pairs of particles) specified by an *interaction potential*  $v(x - y)$ , we add an extra term to the Hamiltonian capturing these interactions:

$$(19.2) \quad H = \int a_x^* (-\Delta a_x) dx + \int a_x^* a_x v(x - y) a_y^* a_y dx dy.$$

The latter term creates particles immediately before it destroys them, and therefore preserves the particle number. Alternatively, one can check that  $[H, \mathcal{N}] = 0$ .

In Bose-Einstein condensates, the interaction potential is very small. So we can modify (19.2) into

$$(19.3) \quad H = \int a_x^* (-\Delta a_x) dx + \frac{1}{N} \int a_x^* a_x v(x - y) a_y^* a_y dx dy,$$

with  $N \gg 1$ . Then, we study the Schrödinger equation on  $\mathcal{F}_s$ :

$$\begin{aligned} i\partial_t \Psi &= H\Psi \\ \Psi(t=0) &= \psi_0, \end{aligned}$$

where the choice of initial data is a coherent state: that is, choose a  $\varphi_0 \in L^2$  with norm 1,<sup>28</sup> and let  $\psi_0 := W(\sqrt{N}M\varphi_0)$  (so that  $\langle \mathcal{N} \rangle_{\psi_0} = N$ ).

We know formally that the solutions to the Schrödinger equation are of the form

$$\Psi(t) = e^{-itH_N} \Psi_0,$$

but that's formal and not extremely helpful in this case.

**Theorem 19.4** (Hepp; Rodmianski-Schlein; Grillakis-Machedon). *As  $N \rightarrow \infty$ ,*

$$\left\| e^{-itH_N} W(\sqrt{N}\varphi_0)\Omega - W(\sqrt{N}\varphi_t)e^{A\varphi_t}\Omega \right\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \longrightarrow 0$$

*if the Hartree equation is satisfied:*

$$\begin{aligned} i\partial_t \varphi_t &= -\Delta \varphi_t + (v * |\varphi|^2)\varphi \\ \varphi(t=0) &= \varphi_0. \end{aligned}$$

One says that the Hartree equation governs the mean-field theory of a QFT of interacting bosons.

The initial result was the derivation; followups provided bounds on the rate of convergence, and Grillakis-Machedon additionally provided a physical reason for why this result exists. The first rate-of-convergence result, due to Rodmianski-Schlein, was

$$\left\| e^{-itH_N} W(\sqrt{N}\varphi_0)\Omega - W(\sqrt{N}\varphi_t)e^{A\varphi_t}\Omega \right\|_{\mathcal{F}_s} \leq \frac{e^{eCt}}{N}.$$

The iterated exponential indicates that the Gromov inequality was applied twice. Strickhartz inequalities might produce a better bound on the rate, but are harder to use. These days, there are bounds which are polynomial in  $t$ , but involve  $N^\alpha$  for  $\alpha > 1$ .

**Strickhartz estimates.** Inside  $\mathbb{R}^d$ , let  $S$  be a codimension-1 surface, and let  $\mu_S$  be a measure concentrated on  $S$ . Assume  $S$  has everywhere nonzero Gauss curvature. The *Fourier transform* of the surface  $S$  is

$$\int e^{i\zeta x} d\mu_S.$$

You can always choose charts for a neighborhood  $S$  such that the origin is in  $S$  and the surface is the graph of a function  $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^d$ , where  $U$  is a neighborhood of the origin in  $\mathbb{R}^{d-1}$ . (This is a *local parametrization* of the surface.) The Morse lemma says that if the Gauss curvature is nonvanishing, these graphs may be taken to be quadratic: there's some chart in which  $x_d(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})$ .

In our attempt to understand the Fourier transform, let  $\rho: \mathbb{R}^{d-1} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a smooth function. Then,

$$\int e^{i\zeta x} \rho(\mathbf{x}) \delta(x_d - \mathbf{x}^2) dx_d d\mathbf{x} = \int e^{i(\zeta \mathbf{x} + \zeta_d(x, A\mathbf{x}))} \rho(\mathbf{x}) d\mathbf{x},$$

and this is a well-understood oscillatory integral:

$$= \frac{1}{|\zeta_d|^{d/2} (\det A)^{1/2}} e^{i(\dots)} (\text{nice stuff}) + o\left(\frac{1}{|\zeta_d|^{d/2}}\right).$$

Therefore

$$\int e^{i\zeta x} d\mu_S \lesssim \frac{1}{|\zeta|^{(d-1)/2}}.$$

How does this relate to Strickhartz estimates? If you take the Fourier transform of

$$i\partial_t u = -\Delta u,$$

<sup>28</sup>Actually,  $\varphi_0 \in H^1$ , the space of  $L^2$  functions whose gradient also has finite  $L^2$  norm.

you get

$$\tau \hat{u}(\tau, \xi) = \xi^2 \hat{u}(\tau, \xi).$$

i.e.

$$(\tau - \xi^2) \hat{u}(\tau, \xi) = 0.$$

Thus,  $\text{supp } \hat{u} = \{(\tau, \xi) \mid \tau = \xi^2\}$ , which is codimension 1. Therefore we can conclude that

$$\int e^{i(\tau t + \xi x)} \hat{u}(\tau, \xi) d\tau d\xi = \int e^{i(\xi^2 t + \xi x)} \rho(\xi) d\xi \sim \frac{1}{t^{d/2}}.$$

Lecture 20.

### Strichartz estimates and the nonlinear Schrödinger equation: 11/7/17

Lecture 21.

: 11/9/17

Note: I missed class on Tuesday (and will miss class again next Tuesday and Thursday).

Last time, we reviewed the Strichartz estimates and applied them to the 3D defocusing cubic nonlinear Schrödinger equation.

**Definition 21.1.** We call  $(q, r)$  *Strichartz admissible* in dimension  $d$  if

$$\frac{2}{q} + \frac{d}{r} = \frac{d}{2},$$

where if  $d > 2$ ,  $2 \leq q, r \leq \infty$ , and if  $d = 2$ ,  $2 < q, r < \infty$ .

**Theorem 21.2** (Strichartz estimates). *Let  $(q, r)$  be Strichartz admissible. Then,*

$$\left\| e^{-it\Delta} u_0 \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} \lesssim \|u_0\|_{L_x^2}.$$

Dually, for any  $(\tilde{q}, \tilde{r})$  Strichartz admissible,<sup>29</sup>

$$\left\| \int_0^t ds e^{-i(t-s)\Delta} F(s, x) \right\|_{L_t^q L_x^r} \lesssim \|F\|_{L_t^{\tilde{q}'} L_x^{\tilde{r}'}}.$$

The 3D defocusing nonlinear Schrödinger equation is

$$(21.3) \quad \begin{aligned} i\partial_t u &= -\Delta u + |u|^2 u \\ u(t=0) &= u_0, \end{aligned}$$

where we ask for  $u_0 \in H^1(\mathbb{R}^3)$ , the Sobolev space of  $f$  such that  $\|\nabla f\|_{L^2}^2 + \|f\|_{L^2}^2 < \infty$ . The *defocusing* is the  $|u|^2 u$  term.

Mild solutions<sup>30</sup> of (21.3) satisfy an integral equation called the *Duchamel formula*:

$$(21.4) \quad u(t) = e^{-it\Delta} u_0 + i \int_0^t ds e^{-i(t-s)\Delta} (|u|^2 u)(s)$$

for  $t \in [0, T]$  for some  $T$ . This is good, because we can now use the fixed-point theorem to get at  $u$ .

<sup>29</sup>TODO: are  $\tilde{q}', \tilde{r}'$  their Hölder conjugates? I think so, but am not certain.

<sup>30</sup>A mild solution is a Goldilocks condition: you want Strichartz estimates to imply uniqueness as well as have conservation laws to get them. Classical solutions are too strong, and there are no conservation laws in general. Weak solutions are too permissive, and lack uniqueness.

Strichartz estimates appear when we try to control the norm. For example, in  $d = 3$ ,  $(q, r) = (2, 6)$  is Strichartz admissible, so

$$\begin{aligned}
 (21.5) \quad \|u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} &\leq \|e^{-it\Delta} u_0\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} + \left\| \int_0^t ds e^{-i(t-s)\Delta} (|u|^2 u)(s) \right\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L^2} + \| |u|^2 u \|_{L_t^1 L_x^2} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L^2} + T^{1/2} \|u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^6} \|u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L^2} + T^{1/2} \|\nabla u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}^2 \|u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Here we use a Sobolev inequality: in  $d = 3$ ,  $\|u\|_{L^6} \leq \|\nabla u\|_{L^2}$ .

To control  $\|\nabla u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2}$ , we'll use energy conservation: if  $E[u]$  denotes the energy of the system, then  $E[u] = E[u_0]$  and

$$E[u] = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \int |\nabla u|^2}_{\|u\|_{\dot{H}^1}^2} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{4} \int \|u\|^4}_{>0} = E[u_0].$$

The second term is positive because of defocusing. We also have mass conservation:

$$M[u] = \int |u|^2 = M[u_0].$$

Hence, if there's defocusing, then

$$\|\nabla u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} < 2E[u_0]$$

for all  $t$ .

We can also use the Strichartz estimates on  $\nabla u$  in the same way as in (21.5):

$$\|\nabla u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \leq \|\nabla u_0\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} + \int_0^T ds \left\| e^{is\Delta} \nabla (|u|^2 u)(s) \right\|_{L_x^2},$$

and since  $e^{is\Delta}$  is unitary, the term inside the integral is just  $\|\nabla (|u|^2 u)\|_{L_s^1 L_x^2}$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\lesssim \|\nabla u_0\|_{L_x^2} + 2\| |u|^2 \nabla u \|_{L_t^1 L_x^2} + \| |u|^2 \overline{\nabla u} \|_{L_t^1 L_x^2} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L_x^2} + 3T^{1/2} \|u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^6}^2 \|\nabla u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L_x^2} + 3T^{1/2} \|\nabla u\|_{L_t^\infty L_x^2} \|\nabla u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \\
 &\lesssim \|u_0\|_{L_x^2} + 6T^{1/2} E_0 \|\nabla u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore for  $T$  sufficiently small and  $\alpha = 0, 1$ ,

$$\|\nabla^\alpha u\|_{L_t^2 L_x^6} \leq \frac{1}{1 - T^{1/2} C E_0} \|\nabla^\alpha u_0\|_{L_x^2},$$

and therefore the integral equation (21.4) is a contraction, so this problem is well-posed.<sup>31</sup>

This concludes our discussion of the nonlinear Schrödinger equation, though there's plenty more interesting questions to think about.

**Fermion gases** The semiclassical limit of electron gases should recover things like the Boltzmann equations that we're familiar with, along with other interesting phenomena.

Let's consider a system of  $N$  indistinguishable electrons, which form a state  $\Psi_n \in (L^2(\mathbb{R}^3))^{\otimes N}$ , the antisymmetric tensor product. The Hamiltonian includes electron-electron interactions:

$$H_N := \hbar_N^2 \sum_{j=1}^N (-\Delta_{x_j}) + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{1 \leq i, j \leq N} V(x_i - x_j).$$

<sup>31</sup>Technically, one should compare the distance between two functions before and after applying the integral operator, but the argument is the same.



The second term is a sum of  $N^2$  terms, hence is  $O(N)$ . The first term is a sum of  $N O(N^{2/3})$  terms, hence is  $O(N^{5/3})$ , just as in the study of the Lieb-Thirring inequalities.

The Planck constant  $\hbar$  should be chosen to make the two terms of the Hamiltonian scale in  $N$  the same way, hence will be  $\hbar_N := N^{-1/3}$ .

The Schrödinger equation for this system is

$$(21.6) \quad \begin{aligned} i\hbar_N \partial_t \Psi_N &= H_N \Psi_N \\ \Psi_N(t=0) &= \Psi_{N,0}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $P_j := i\nabla_j$  be the momentum operator, and assume there are constants  $A$  and  $B$  such that  $\langle x_j^2 \rangle_{\Psi_{n,0}} < A$  and  $\langle P_j^2 \rangle_{\Psi_{N,0}} < BN^{2/3}$ .

Work of Narnhofer-Sewell relates this to the  $N$ -particle *Wigner transform*

$$(21.7) \quad W_N(t, \mathbf{x}_N, \mathbf{v}_N) := \int d\mathbf{y}_N \overline{\Psi_N\left(t, \mathbf{x}_N - \frac{\hbar_N \mathbf{y}_N}{2}\right)} \Psi_N\left(t, \mathbf{x}_N + \frac{\hbar_N \mathbf{y}_N}{2}\right) e^{i\mathbf{v}_N \cdot \mathbf{y}_N}.$$

Let's look at its Fourier transform, where  $\mathbf{x}_N \leftrightarrow \boldsymbol{\xi}_N$  and  $\mathbf{v}_N \leftrightarrow \boldsymbol{\eta}_N$ :

$$\widehat{W}_N(t, \boldsymbol{\xi}_N, \boldsymbol{\eta}_N) = \langle \exp(-i(\mathbf{x}_N \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}_N + \hbar_N \mathbf{P}_N \cdot \boldsymbol{\eta}_N)) \rangle_{\Psi_N(t)}.$$

The  $n$ -particle marginals are

$$W_N^{(n)}(t, \mathbf{x}_n, \mathbf{v}_n) := \int dx_{n+1} \cdots dx_N dv_{n+1} \cdots dv_N W_N(t, \mathbf{x}_N, \mathbf{v}_N).$$

After a Fourier transform, which sends  $W \leftrightarrow \mu$ ,

$$\widehat{\mu}_N^{(n)}(t, \boldsymbol{\xi}_n, \boldsymbol{\eta}_n) = \langle \exp(-i(\mathbf{x}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\xi}_n + \hbar_N \mathbf{P}_n \cdot \boldsymbol{\eta}_n)) \rangle_{\Psi_N(t)}.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t \widehat{\mu}_N^{(n)}(t, \boldsymbol{\xi}_n, \boldsymbol{\eta}_n) &= \sum_{j=1}^n \xi_j \nabla_{\eta_j} \widehat{\mu}_N^{(n)}(t, \boldsymbol{\xi}_n, \boldsymbol{\eta}_n) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{N} \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} \int dq \widehat{V}(q) \left( 2N^{1/2} \sin\left(\frac{1}{2} M^{-1/3} (q \cdot (\eta_i - \eta_j))\right) \right) \widehat{\mu}_N^{(n)}(t, \boldsymbol{\xi}_n, \boldsymbol{\eta}_n) \\ &\quad + \frac{N-n}{N} \sum_{1 \leq j \leq n} \int dq \widehat{V}(q) \left( 2N^{1/2} \sin\left(\frac{1}{2} N^{-1/3} q \cdot \eta_j\right) \right) \mu_N^{(n+1)}(t; \xi_1, \dots, \xi_j + q, \dots, \xi_n - q; \mathbf{v}_N, 0). \end{aligned}$$

This is a terrible-looking PDE for the  $n$ -particle marginals, but it has an interesting behavior: the  $n$ -particle marginals depend on the  $(n+1)$ -particle marginals. Thus these equations define a hierarchy, called the *BBGKY hierarchy* for  $N$ -fermion systems, after the people who researched it, Bogoliubov, Bonn, Green, Kirkwood, and Yvon.

We want to understand whether this is well-posed and hence defines an initial value problem. It certainly helps us to observe that this equation is linear for  $(\mu_N^{(1)}, \mu_N^{(2)}, \dots, \mu_N^{(N)})$ .

Assume  $\widehat{V}$  is compactly supported. Then, pointwise in  $\boldsymbol{\xi}_N$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_N$  and assuming  $\mu_N^{(n)}$  is sufficiently smooth, Narnhofer-Sewell prove that as  $N \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mu_N^{(n)} \rightarrow \mu^{(n)}$  for each  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , on  $\mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3$ .

The idea is to look at how each term scales in  $n$ , and use that to relate this to the *infinite Vlasov hierarchy*

$$\partial_t \mu^{(n)} = \sum_{j=1}^n \xi_j \nabla_{\eta_j} \mu^{(n)} + \sum_{j=1}^n \int dq \widehat{V}(q) (q \cdot \eta_j) \widehat{\mu}^{(n+1)}(t; \xi_1, \dots, \xi_j + q, \dots, \xi_n - q; \boldsymbol{\eta}_n, 0).$$

This is well-posed, and solutions exist and are unique. If at  $t = 0$ ,  $\mu^{(n)}$  factors as a product of copies of  $\mu^{(1)}$ , then at  $t > 0$ ,  $\mu^{(n)}$  remains factorized, and therefore  $\mu^{(1)}$  satisfies the Vlasov equation. This will be our jumping-off point next time.

Lecture 22.

: 11/14/17

Lecture 23.

: 11/16/17

Lecture 24.

**Quantum electrodynamics and the isospectral renormalization group: 11/28/17**

Today we're going to discuss the quantum field theory of electromagnetism, called *quantum electrodynamics* (QED). We'll work in the simplest case, nonrelativistic QED, a theory of a single non-relativistic, quantum-mechanical electron together with a photon field (which is relativistic).

In this case, Fock space for the photon field is

$$\mathcal{F} = \Gamma(L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{C}^2)) = \mathbb{C} \oplus \bigoplus_{n \geq 1} \left( L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{C}^2) \right)^{\otimes n}.$$

That is, this is a bosonic field, and the  $\mathbb{C}^2$  represents the two degrees of freedom: the wave is one complex direction, and the photon may move perpendicular to it. The canonical commutation relations for this Fock space are

$$(24.1) \quad \begin{aligned} [\hat{a}_\lambda(k), \hat{a}_{\lambda'}^*(k')] &= \delta_{\lambda, \lambda'} \delta(k - k') \\ [\hat{a}_\lambda^\sharp(k), \hat{a}_{\lambda'}^\sharp(k')] &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Here  $\lambda, \lambda' \in \{0, 1\}$ , and in (24.1),  $\delta_{\lambda, \lambda'}$  is a Kronecker delta and  $\delta(k - k')$  is a Dirac delta.

The Hilbert space for the electron is just  $L^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ , which we'll denote  $L_{\text{el}}^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$ . Thus the total Hilbert space of the system is

$$\mathcal{H} := L_{\text{el}}^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \otimes \mathcal{F}.$$

The Hamiltonian for the photon field,  $H_f: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ , is

$$(24.2) \quad H_f := \sum_{\lambda} \int dk \hat{a}_{\lambda}^*(k) |k| a_{\lambda}(k).$$

The electron does not change, so its Hamiltonian  $H_{\text{el}}: L_{\text{el}}^2(\mathbb{R}^3) \rightarrow L_{\text{el}}^2(\mathbb{R}^3)$  is the identity. But the electron and photonic fields are coupled, so the total Hamiltonian isn't just the tensor product of the two pieces:

$$(24.3) \quad H := \mathbf{1}_{\text{el}} \otimes H_f + \frac{1}{2m_{\text{el}}} \left( i \nabla_{x_{\text{el}}} \otimes \mathbf{1}_f - e A_f(x_{\text{el}}) \right)^2,$$

where  $m_{\text{el}}$  is the electron mass,  $e$  is the electron charge, and  $A_f$  is the quantized electromagnetic vector potential

$$(24.4) \quad A_f(x_{\text{el}}) = \sum_{\lambda} \int \frac{dk}{\sqrt{|k|}} \varepsilon_{\lambda}(k) \left( e^{i x_{\text{el}} k} \otimes \hat{a}_{\lambda}(k) + e^{-i x_{\text{el}} k} \otimes \hat{a}_{\lambda}^*(k) \right).$$

Here,  $\varepsilon_1$  and  $\varepsilon_2$  are *polarization vectors*, meaning that for all  $k$ ,

$$\left\{ \varepsilon_1(k), \varepsilon_2(k), \frac{k}{|k|} \right\}$$

is an orthonormal basis of  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . These cannot be chosen globally, which is a consequence of the hairy ball theorem in topology (every continuous vector field on  $S^2$  must vanish somewhere).

Unfortunately, (24.4) looks to be full of problems. The  $|k|^{-1/2}$  term means this integral will not converge at 0; there are also issues for large  $k$ . Hence we *regularize* (24.4), adding a *cutoff term* (in red):

$$(24.5) \quad A_{\sigma}(x_{\text{el}}) = \sum_{\lambda} \int \frac{dk}{\sqrt{|k|}} \kappa_{\sigma}(|k|) \varepsilon_{\lambda}(k) \left( e^{i x_{\text{el}} k} \otimes \hat{a}_{\lambda}(k) + e^{-i x_{\text{el}} k} \otimes \hat{a}_{\lambda}^*(k) \right).$$

for some  $\sigma$  with  $0 < \sigma \ll 1$ , and we let  $H_\sigma$  denote the Hamiltonian using this cutoff potential. This cutoff function should be a smooth function that contains an *infrared regularization*, growing slowly on  $0 < |k| < 1$ :

$$\frac{\kappa_\sigma(|k|)}{\sqrt{|k|}} \sim \frac{1}{|k|^\mu}$$

for some  $\mu < 1/2$  when  $|k| < 1$ . Then, this function should die off as  $1 < |k| < 2$ , which is an *ultraviolet regularization*. These names occur because the infrared regularization corresponds to low frequencies, and the ultraviolet regularization to high frequencies, just like infrared and ultraviolet light.

The limit  $\sigma \rightarrow 0$ , corresponding to fixing the infrared regularization, is understood mathematically. But it is not known how to remove the ultraviolet regularization, even as a limiting process.

The Hamiltonian (24.5) is clearly translation-invariant in  $x_{\text{el}}$ . Classically, Noether's theorem uses this to deduce conservation of momentum, and something similar happens here.

**Definition 24.6.** The *total momentum operator* for this system is

$$(24.7) \quad P_{\text{tot}} := i\nabla_{x_{\text{el}}} \otimes \mathbf{1}_f + \mathbf{1}_{\text{el}} \otimes P_f,$$

where

$$(24.8) \quad P_f := \sum_\lambda \int dk \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) k \hat{a}_\lambda(k).$$

Thus if  $\Phi \in \mathcal{F}$ ,

$$(P_f \Phi)^{(n)}(k_1, \dots, k_n) = \sum_{j=1}^n k_j \cdot \Phi(k_1, \dots, k_n).$$

Translation-invariance implies that  $[H_\sigma, P_{\text{tot}}] = 0$ , and therefore that  $P_{\text{tot}}$  is conserved under time-evolution by  $e^{itH_\sigma}$ . We also have  $\text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}}) = \mathbb{R}^3$ .

We'd like to understand the Fourier transform on  $\mathcal{H}$ , in order to analyze this system, and in general it's useful to have a definition of the Fourier transform that's natural for the system in question, to make the analysis easier. If  $\Phi \in \mathcal{H}$ , the operator  $U: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$  defined by

$$(U\Phi)(p) := \int dx e^{ix(p-P_f)} \Phi$$

is unitary, and

$$(U^* H_\sigma U)(p) = H_f + \frac{1}{2m} \left( p - P_f - eA_\sigma(0) \right)^2,$$

which is  $H_\sigma(p)$  by definition (after removing the tensor terms from (24.3), which is OK because **TODO**). Letting

$$\mathcal{H} := \int^\oplus dp \mathcal{H}_p,$$

where  $\mathcal{H}_p \cong \mathcal{F}$ , then  $\mathcal{H}$  is a fiber bundle with base  $\mathbb{R}^3 = \text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}})$  and fibers isomorphic to  $\mathcal{F}$ . The operator  $\exp(itH_\sigma)$  leaves the fibers invariant, and  $H_\sigma(p) \cong H_\sigma|_{\mathcal{H}_p}$ .

We can use all of this to understand a fundamental question about this system — what are particles? What is an electron?

**Theorem 24.9.** Let  $0 < \sigma \ll 1$  be fixed, and  $|p| < p_c < 1$ . Then,

- (1)  $E_\sigma(p) := \inf \text{Spec } H_\sigma(p)$  is a non-degenerate eigenvalue with an eigenvector  $\Psi_\sigma(p)$ , called the fiber ground state,
- (2)  $E_\sigma(\cdot)$  is of class  $C^2(B_{p_c}(0))$ ,<sup>32</sup> with

$$\left\| E_\sigma(p) - \frac{p^2}{2} \right\|_{C^2} < Ce^2,$$

where  $e$  is the electron charge, and  $E_\sigma$  is radial in that it only depends on  $|p|$ .

- (3) Uniformly in  $\sigma > 0$ ,

$$1 - Ce^2 < \partial_{|p|} E_\sigma(p) < 1.$$

<sup>32</sup>It's possible to show higher regularity, and that this is uniform in  $\sigma$ , but these are much harder.

## (4) The limit

$$E(\cdot) := \lim_{\sigma \searrow 0} E_\sigma(\cdot)$$

exists in  $C^2(B_{p_c}(0))$ .

The upshot is that we can plot  $\text{Spec}(H_\sigma(p))$  over  $\text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}}) \cong \mathbb{R}^3$  (or even a radial slice). The absolutely continuous spectrum is the area above a parabola centered at 0, and the infimum produces an eigenvector  $\Psi_\sigma(p)$ . This is the electron: it's not the naked electron we started with, but some conglomerate of it and the photonic field.

*Remark.* We started with the uncoupled electron and photonic field because, in a sense, we didn't know any better. You could try to start *a priori* from the description that we just found, and this can be done, e.g. to compute scattering states. However, only part of this has been worked out; it's extremely technical. ◀

$\Psi_\sigma(p)$  is called an *infra-particle* or a *dressed electron state*: the original isolated electron is now dressed with photons and describes the object in real life (or at least physics) that we wanted to study. Physically, it describes the electron surrounded by a cloud of photons at low frequency.

The *photon number operator* is

$$\mathcal{N}_f = \sum_\lambda \int dk \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) \hat{a}_\lambda(k),$$

as with the number operator from before. We're interested in the expectation

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Psi_\sigma(p), \mathcal{N}_f \Psi_\sigma(p) \rangle &\sim \|\nabla_p E_\sigma(p)\| \int \frac{dk \kappa_\sigma^2(|k|)}{(|k|^{1/2}|k|)^2} \\ &\sim \|\nabla_p E_\sigma(p)\| |\log \sigma|. \end{aligned}$$

The first piece remains bounded when  $\sigma \rightarrow 0$ , but  $|\log \sigma| \rightarrow \infty$ . This is a little disturbing, since it tells us  $\Psi_\sigma(p)$  fails to be an element of the Fock space when  $\sigma = 0$  and  $p = 0$ .<sup>33</sup> This is called the *infrared catastrophe*; to fix it, we'll need to take a Weyl transform and some interesting  $C^*$ -algebraic techniques. Ultimately, the issue is that starting with a single unbound electron is not right, and we needed to begin with more electrons.

Another way to think of this is that it's possible to add photons of low frequency at almost no cost, because they have no mass, so asking how many photons there are is not a well-posed question.

The infrared catastrophe is discussed in many physics textbooks, but often just on the perturbative level. This requires less theory, which is nice, but the argument is more complicated.

**The isospectral renormalization group.** A lot of people have studied renormalization in this formulation (based on projectors on Hilbert space), so there are lots of names associated with the functions.

Let  $\mathcal{H}$  be a separable Hilbert space,  $P: \mathcal{H} \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$  be a projector (so  $P^2 = P$ ), and  $\bar{P} := \mathbf{1} - P$ . Often we want to spectrally analyze some self-adjoint operator  $H$  on  $\mathcal{H}$ , but this is difficult. Instead, we'd like to reduce this problem to the spectral analysis of  $H$  on the range of  $P$ , which is cleverly chosen to make this work, and to have small range. This is done with something called the Feshbach-Krein-Schur map.

**Theorem 24.10** (Feshbach projection method). *Assume  $(\bar{P}H\bar{P} - z)$  is invertible on the range of  $\bar{P}$ , and let  $\bar{R}(z) := (\bar{P}H\bar{P} - z)^{-1}$ . Let  $F_P[H - Z]: \text{Im}(P) \rightarrow \text{Im}(P)$  denote the Feshbach map*

$$F_P[H - Z] := P(H - z)P - PH\bar{P}\bar{R}(z)\bar{P}HP$$

and

$$Q_P[H - z] := P - \bar{P}\bar{R}(z)\bar{P}HP.$$

Assume

$$\bar{R}(z)\bar{P}, \bar{R}(z)\bar{P}HP, PH\bar{P}\bar{R}(z)\bar{P}HP$$

are bounded operators. Then,

- (1)  $F_P[H - z]$  is invertible on  $\text{Im}(P)$  iff  $H - z$  is invertible on  $\mathcal{H}$ ,
- (2)  $(H - z)\psi = 0$  (with  $\psi \in \mathcal{H}$ ) iff  $F_P[H - z]P\psi = 0$ , and
- (3)  $F_P[H - z]\varphi = 0$  (with  $\varphi \in \text{Im}(P)$ ) iff  $(H - z)Q_P[H - z]\varphi = 0$ .

<sup>33</sup>When  $p = 0$ , the number of photons is actually finite, because  $\langle \mathcal{N}_f \rangle$  is bounded as  $\sigma \rightarrow 0$ .

This theorem is also called *Feshbach isospectrality*.

One uses this tool by choosing  $P$  to be small perturbations for which the assumptions of this theorem are easy to prove, and we'll see this next time.

One fun consequence is that if you thought some terms in the Schrödinger equation were missing, it doesn't affect the physical behavior of the system (as long as you're in the same piece of the renormalization group flow). This is what guarantees stability in the setup of quantum field theory.

Lecture 25.

### More isospectral renormalization: 11/30/17

*"You can see that it's a mess. But it's an organized mess."*

We're studying non-relativistic quantum electrodynamics, where there's a photonic field and an electron which behaves quantum-mechanically, but not relativistically. The Hilbert space of states can be described as

$$\mathcal{H} = L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathcal{F}),$$

where

$$\mathcal{F} = \Gamma(L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{C})) = \bigoplus_{n \geq 0} L^2(\mathbb{R}^3, \mathbb{C})^{\otimes n}$$

is the Fock space for the photon field. We introduced a cutoff Hamiltonian  $H_\sigma$  and a total momentum operator  $P_{\text{tot}}$  in (24.7) satisfying  $[P_{\text{tot}}, H_\sigma] = 0$ . Thus time evolution by  $e^{itH_\sigma}$  leaves the momentum invariant.

When we considered  $\mathcal{H} = \int^\oplus dp \mathcal{H}_p$  (where  $\mathcal{H}_p \cong \mathcal{F}$ ), summed over  $\text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}}) = \mathbb{R}^3$ , this says that time evolution leaves the fiber invariant as well. On the fiber over  $p$ , the fiber Hamiltonian is

$$H_\sigma(p) := H_\sigma|_{\mathcal{H}_p} = H_f + \frac{1}{2m} \left( p - P_f - eA_\sigma(0) \right)^2,$$

where  $P_f$  was defined in (24.8),

$$(25.1) \quad A_\sigma(0) = \sum_\lambda \int \frac{dk}{|k|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(|k|) \varepsilon_\lambda(k) \left( e^{ikx} \hat{a}_\lambda(k) + \text{h.c.} \right),$$

and

$$(25.2) \quad H_f = \sum_\lambda \int dk |k| \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) \hat{a}_\lambda(k).$$

We want to prove that  $\text{Spec}(H_\sigma)$  also fibers over  $\text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}}) = \mathbb{R}^3$ , and the piece above a  $p \in \mathbb{R}^3$ , which is  $\text{Spec}(H_\sigma(p))$ , is the line above  $p^2/2m + O(e^2)$ . The infimum is an eigenvector and everything else is the continuous spectrum.

We're going to prove this using isospectral renormalization group (RG) flow, and specifically the Feshbach-Krein-Schur map.<sup>34</sup> Recall that if  $\mathcal{H}$  is a separable Hilbert space,  $P$  is a projector,  $\bar{P} := 1 - P$ , and  $H$  is a closed operator on  $\mathcal{H}$ , we defined two maps  $F_p[H - z]$  and  $Q_p[H - z]$  in Theorem 24.10, where  $z \in \mathbb{C}$  is such that  $(\bar{P}H\bar{P} - z)$  is invertible on the range of  $\bar{P}$ ;  $F_p[H - z]$  goes from  $\text{Im}(P) \rightarrow \text{Im}(P)$ , and  $Q_p[H - z]: \text{Im}(P) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}$ .

Our use of this technique depends on Theorem 24.10 to reduce our questions on the spectrum from all of  $\mathcal{H}$  to a subspace.

**Lemma 25.3** (Composition identity). *Let  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be projectors with  $P_1 P_2 = P_2$  (equivalently,  $\text{Im}(P_2) \subset \text{Im}(P_1)$ ). Then,*

$$F_{P_2}[F_{P_1}[H - z]] = F_{P_2}[H - z].$$

The proofs of the statements in Theorem 24.10 boil down to linear algebra. For example, for the first statement, one shows that

$$F_P[H - z]P(H - z)^{-1}P = P,$$

and therefore on the range of  $P$ ,

$$F_P[H - z]^{-1} = P(H - z)^{-1}P.$$

<sup>34</sup>This map was first studied long before renormalization, for entirely functional-analytic purposes.

Let's now use this to analyze QED. Fix  $x_{\text{el}} = 0$ , so the fiber Hamiltonian is

$$H_\sigma(p) = \frac{p^2}{2m} + \underbrace{H_f + \frac{1}{m}(p - P_f)}_{(1)} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2m}P_f^2 + \frac{1}{2m}\left((p - P_f)A_\sigma + A_\sigma(p - P_f)\right)}_{(2)} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2m}A_\sigma^2}_{(3)}.$$

If  $\underline{\mathcal{P}} = (H_f, P_f)$ , then the terms in (1) are equal to  $T[\underline{\mathcal{P}}]$ .

$A_\sigma$  contains creation and annihilation operators. **TODO:** I'm very confused about notation here, but we let  $W_{m,n}$  be an operator related somehow to  $A_\sigma$ , but with  $m$  creation and  $n$  annihilation operators. Then

$$(2) = W_{1,0} + W_{0,1} = \sum_\lambda \int \frac{dk}{|k|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(|k|) a_\lambda^*(k) W_{1,0}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; k, \lambda]$$

and

$$(3) = W_{2,0} + W_{1,1} + W_{0,2}.$$

*Remark.* The commutation relations tell us that

$$(25.4) \quad \begin{aligned} f[\underline{\mathcal{P}}] \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) &= \hat{a}_\lambda^* f[\underline{\mathcal{P}} + (|k|, k)] \\ &= \hat{a}_\lambda^* f[(H_f + |k|, P_f + k)], \end{aligned}$$

because

$$H_f \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) = \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) (H_f + |k|).$$

Similarly,

$$(25.5) \quad \hat{a}_\lambda(k) f[\underline{\mathcal{P}}] = f[\underline{\mathcal{P}} + (|k|, k)] \hat{a}_\lambda(k). \quad \blacktriangleleft$$

Using (25.4) and (25.5), we can shuffle the creation and annihilation operators around.

**Definition 25.6.** A monomial in  $\hat{a}_\lambda^*(k)$  and  $\hat{a}_\lambda(k)$  is *Wick-ordered* if all  $\hat{a}_\lambda^*$  terms are to the left of all  $\hat{a}_\lambda$  terms.

**Definition 25.7.** Let

$$\begin{aligned} K^{(m)} &:= (k_1, \lambda_1, \dots, k_m, \lambda_m) \\ \tilde{K}^{(n)} &:= (\tilde{k}_1, \tilde{\lambda}_1, \dots, \tilde{k}_n, \tilde{\lambda}_n). \end{aligned}$$

The *generalized Wick monomial* of order  $(m, n)$  is  $K^{(m,n)} := (K^{(m)}, \tilde{K}^{(n)})$ . We associate to it the values

$$\begin{aligned} |K^{(m,n)}| &:= \left( \prod_{j=1}^m |k_j| \right) \left( \prod_{\ell=1}^n |\tilde{k}_\ell| \right) \\ \tilde{\kappa}_\sigma(K^{(m,n)}) &:= \left( \prod_{j=1}^m \kappa_\sigma(|k_j|) \right) \left( \prod_{\ell=1}^n \kappa_\sigma(|\tilde{k}_\ell|) \right). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we may define  $W_{m,n}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}]$ <sup>35</sup> as **TODO** (I missed this but I did take a picture).

**The renormalization group.** Let  $P_1 := \chi[H_f \leq 1]$ , so  $P_1$  is a projection.<sup>36</sup> Define

$$H^{(1)} := F_{P_1}[H_\sigma(p) - z],$$

where  $z$  is such that  $(\bar{P}_1 H_\sigma(p) \bar{P}_1 - z)$  is invertible on  $\text{Im}(\bar{P}_1)$ . Therefore, by Theorem 24.10,

$$H^{(1)} = P_1(T^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}] + W^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}])P_1 - P_1 W^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 \bar{R}(z) \bar{P}_1 W^{(0)} P_1.$$

On  $\text{Im}(\bar{P}_1)$ ,

$$\bar{R}(z) = (\bar{P}_1 T^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 + \bar{P} - 1 W^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 - z)^{-1}$$

<sup>35</sup>So is this the definition I wanted to know earlier? Or is it something different? I'm confused about the order we're defining things.

<sup>36</sup>**TODO:** in that case,  $\chi$  definitely can't mean characteristic function. And how can we project onto a region which is presumably nonlinear?

and therefore we can take the Neumann series of this operator, which you might be surprised to see a use for:

$$(25.8) \quad = \sum_{L=0}^{\infty} (\bar{P}_1 T^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 - z)^{-1} \left( \bar{P}_1 W^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 (\bar{P}_1 T^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 - z)^{-1} \right)^L.$$

We can write this in terms of generalized Wick polynomials: since  $[P_f, H_f] = 0$ ,  $[P_1, T^{(0)}[\mathcal{P}]] = 0$ , and therefore  $P_1 T^{(0)} \bar{P}_1 = 0$ , so in particular  $P_1(H - z) \bar{P}_1 = P_1 W \bar{P}_1$ . The upshot is that

$$(25.8) = \sum_{m+n \geq 0} \Delta W_{m,n}^{(0)}[\mathcal{P}].$$

Analyzing this sum is not trivial: infinitely many terms are nonzero. But at least its norm is small: for  $m, n \geq 1$ ,

$$\Delta W_{m,n}^{(0)}[\mathcal{P}, z] = \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|} \tilde{\kappa}_\sigma(K^{(m,n)}) \hat{a}^*(K^{(m)}) \Delta w_{m,n}[\mathcal{P}, K^{(m,n)}] \hat{a}(K^{(n)}),$$

and we have a bound

$$\left\| \Delta w_{m,n}[\mathcal{P}, K^{(m,n)}] \right\|_{C_{\mathcal{P}}^2 L_{K^{(m,n)}}^\infty} < C e^2 \xi^{-(m+n)}$$

for some  $\xi > 1$ , where  $e$  is the electric charge.

For  $m + n = 0$ , we instead have

$$\Delta T^{(0)} := \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)}[\mathcal{P}, z] - \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)}[(0, 0), z],$$

and the second term is also  $\Delta E^{(0)}[z] \in \mathbb{C}$ .

This gives us a description of  $H^{(1)}$  in terms of generalized Wick monomials:

$$(25.9) \quad H^{(1)} := F_{P_1}[H_\sigma(p) - z] = \Delta E^{(0)}[z] + (T^{(0)} + \Delta T^{(0)})[\mathcal{P}; z] + \sum_{m,n \geq 1} \left( W_{m,n}^{(0)} + \Delta W_{m,n}^{(0)} \right) [\mathcal{P}; z].$$

And we can apply this again: we decompose Fock space into subspaces of dyadic shells, where  $P_\rho := \chi[H_f < \rho]$  for  $\rho < 1/2$ . This is a Littlewood-Paley decomposition of Fock space, and step by step one calculates in subspaces where the photons have smaller and smaller energies, and asymptotically have zero energy. Physics is needed to define these projections in a way that gives you the ground state rather than nothing — eventually this will converge to something which allows you to solve the eigenvalue problem.

But this is not the best way from a technical standpoint. An alternative approach is to reduce from  $P_1$  to  $P_\rho$  (which in renormalization group theory is called *decimation*). Then, rescale it to size  $P_1$ , decimate, rescale, and so on. This produces a sequence  $H^{(n)}$  of *effective Hamiltonians*, which all have a form like in (25.9) and all act on  $\text{Im}(P_1)$ . The *renormalization map* is the map  $H^{(n)} \rightarrow H^{(n+1)}$  — but now this is a discrete dynamical system, and one can study it on the space of Hamiltonians. One is interested in fixed points, and Hamiltonians that converge to the same fixed point are said to be in the same *universality class*.

Physically speaking, the fixed point determines the behavior of the system, so extra terms, or even infinitely many  $W_{m,n}$  terms, don't affect the physics if they flow to the same point. This provides a stability under perturbations (for the particular convergence properties).

— Lecture 26. —

### The renormalization dynamic system: 12/5/17

We're in the middle of trying to set up isospectral renormalization to understand the spectrum in QED. It's difficult, and the reason it's difficult is that the lowest eigenvalue of the Hamiltonian borders the continuous spectrum (one says there's no *spectral gap*), which makes the analysis more difficult.

We've been following the method established by Bach, Fröhlich, and Segal between 1993 and 1996, where we set up the state space as a fiber bundle over  $\text{Spec}(P_{\text{tot}}) = \mathbb{R}^3$ ; on the fiber above  $p$ , the fiber Hamiltonian is

$$(26.1) \quad H_\sigma(p) = \frac{p^2}{2} + H_f + \frac{1}{m} p \cdot P_f + \frac{1}{2m} P_f^2 + \frac{1}{2m} \left( (p - P_f) \cdot A_\sigma + A_\sigma(p - P_f) \right) + \frac{1}{2m} A_\sigma^2.$$

On  $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{H}_p$ , we defined the projector  $P_1 = \chi[H_f < 1]$ , for which the *effective Hamiltonian* is

$$F_{p_1}[H_\sigma(p) - z] = E : 0[z] + T^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z] + W^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z],$$

where  $\underline{\mathcal{P}} := (H_f, P_f)$  and

$$W^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z] = \sum_{m+n \geq 1} W_{m,n}^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z]$$

and

$$W_{m,n}^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z] = \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|^{1/2-\sigma}} a^*(K^{(m)}) w_{m,n}^{(0)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z; K^{(m,n)}] a(\tilde{K}^{(n)}).$$

Here  $K^{(m,n)} = (K^{(m)}, \tilde{K}^{(n)})$  is the generalized Wick monomial defined last time, corresponding to using Wick ordering of  $m$  creation and  $n$  annihilation operators to account for their commutation relations.

We're going to define a Banach space of effective Hamiltonians on which renormalization acts as a dynamical system, which will give us some useful tools for studying it. Let

$$\underline{\mathcal{W}} := \mathbb{C} \oplus \mathcal{T} \oplus \bigoplus_{m+n \geq 1} \mathcal{W}_{m,n}.$$

An element  $\underline{w} \in \underline{\mathcal{W}}$  will be denoted by a tuple  $(z, T, (w_{m,n}))$ .<sup>37</sup> This is a Banach space with the norm

$$\|\underline{w}\|_{\xi} := \|T\|_{C_{\underline{\mathcal{P}}}^2 C_{|p|}^1 C_z^1} + \sum_{m+n \geq 1} \xi^{m+n} \|w_{m,n}\|_{C_{\underline{\mathcal{P}}}^2 C_{K^{(m,n)}}^1 C_{|p|}^1 C_z^1},$$

as long as  $\xi < 1$ .

**Lemma 26.2.** Let  $\|\cdot\|_{\text{op}}$  denote the operator norm for an operator  $\text{Im}(P_1) \rightarrow \text{Im}(P_1)$ . Then there's a constant  $C$  such that

$$\|W_{m,n}[[w_{m,n}]]\|_{\text{op}} \leq C \|w_{m,n}\|_{L_{z, \underline{\mathcal{P}}, K^{(m,n)}}^\infty}.$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} \|W_{m,n}[[w_{m,n}]]\|_{\text{op}} &= \sup_{\substack{\Phi, \Psi \in \text{Im}(P_1) \\ \|\Phi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1, \|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1}} |(\Psi, W_{m,n}\Phi)| \\ &\leq \sup_{\substack{\Phi, \Psi \in \text{Im}(P_1) \\ \|\Phi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1, \|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1}} \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|^{1-\sigma}} \left\| |K^{(m)}|^{1/2} a(K^{(m)}) \Psi \right\|_{\mathcal{F}} \|w_{m,n}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z]\| \left\| |\tilde{K}^{(n)}|^{1/2} a(\tilde{K}^{(n)}) \Phi \right\|_{\mathcal{F}} \\ &\leq \sup_{\substack{\Phi, \Psi \in \text{Im}(P_1) \\ \|\Phi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1, \|\Psi\|_{\mathcal{F}}=1}} \left( \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|^{2-2\sigma}} \right)^{1/2} \|w_{m,n}\|_{L_{z, \underline{\mathcal{P}}, K^{(m,n)}}^\infty} \left( \int dK^{(m)} |K^{(m)}| \|a(K^{(m)}) \Psi\|^2 \right)^{1/2} \left( \int d\tilde{K}^{(n)} |\tilde{K}^{(n)}| \|a(\tilde{K}^{(n)}) \Phi\|^2 \right)^{1/2}, \end{aligned}$$

giving us the desired constant.  $\square$

Next we'll construct the renormalization map in a few steps. The first step is a complexity-decreasing step called *Feshbach decimation*. Let  $0 < \rho < 1/2$  and  $P_\rho := \chi[H_f < \rho]$ . Then, define  $F_\rho[H[\underline{w}]]$  and apply the Neumann series and Wick ordering as we did before.<sup>38</sup>

Renormalization is not a formal process: it requires strong self-similarity properties on the space of effective Hamiltonians. This allows us to take the next step, which is rescaling. We define a unitary operator  $\Gamma_\rho: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  such that

$$\Gamma_\rho(a_\lambda^\sharp(k)) \Gamma_\rho^* = \rho^{-3/2} a_\lambda(\rho^{-1}k).$$

<sup>37</sup>TODO: what are  $\mathcal{T}$  and  $\mathcal{W}_{m,n}$ ? Presumably the space of terms  $T$ , resp.  $w_{m,n}$  we discussed before, but I don't know what that is. It looks like  $T$  and  $w_{m,n}$  are functions of  $z$ ?

<sup>38</sup>Renormalization applies to different field theories, but the decimation map can look very different in different situations.



This preserves the number operator  $\mathcal{N}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\Gamma_\rho(\mathcal{W})\Gamma_\rho^* &= \Gamma_\rho\left(\sum_\lambda \int dk a_\lambda^*(k)a_\lambda(k)\right) \\ &= \sum_\lambda \rho^{-3} \int dk a_\lambda^*(\rho^{-1}k)a_\lambda(\rho^{-1}k) = W\end{aligned}$$

by rescaling  $k \mapsto \rho k$ .

In particular, if  $f \in \mathcal{F}_1$ , then

$$(\Gamma_\rho f)(k) = \rho^{-3/2} f(\rho^{-1}k)$$

and

$$(\Gamma_\rho f^{(n)})(K^{(n)}) = \rho^{-3/2} f^{(n)}(\rho^{-1}K^{(n)}).$$

*Remark.* We also have<sup>39</sup>

$$T[\mathcal{P}; z] = \alpha[z]H_f + \beta[z]P_f'' + \sigma(H_f^2) + \sigma(P_f^2) + \sigma(H_f P_f). \quad \blacktriangleleft$$

**Definition 26.3.** The *rescaling map* is

$$S_\rho := \frac{1}{\rho} \Gamma_\rho(\dots) \Gamma_\rho^*.$$

This implies<sup>40</sup>

$$S_\rho[T] = \alpha H_f + \beta P_f'' + \rho(\dots).$$

First, let's define the renormalization of  $z$ , the first piece of the space of effective Hamiltonians:<sup>41</sup>

$$z \mapsto \hat{z} = \mathcal{W}_\rho[z] := z + \Delta W_{0,0}[\underline{Q}; z].$$

**Definition 26.4.** The *renormalization map* is  $R_\rho := \mathcal{E}_\rho \circ S_\rho \circ F_{P_\rho}$ .

In particular, we can say that  $R_\rho[H[\underline{w}]] = H[\underline{\hat{w}}]$ <sup>42</sup> and that  $R_\rho$  carries  $W_{m,n}[\underline{w}] \mapsto W_{m,n}[\underline{\hat{w}}_{m,n}]$ . The operator

$$F_{P_\rho}: w_{m,n} \mapsto w_{m,n} + \Delta w_{m,n}$$

acts on  $\text{Im}(P_\rho)$ .<sup>43</sup>

Now, what does the rescaling map  $S_\rho$  do?

$$\begin{aligned}S_\rho[W_{m,n}[w_{m,n} + \Delta w_{m,n}]] &= \frac{1}{\rho} \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|^{1/2-\sigma}} \rho^{-(3/2)(m+n)} a^*(\rho^{-1}K^{(m)}) (w_{m,n} + \Delta w_{m,n})[\rho \mathcal{P}; z; K^{(m,n)}] a(\rho^{-1}K^{(n)}) \\ (26.5) \quad &= \rho^{-1-(3/2)(m+n)+3(m+n)-(1/2-\sigma)(m+n)} \int \frac{dK^{(m,n)}}{|K^{(m,n)}|^{1/2-\sigma}} a^*(K^{(m)}) \underbrace{(w_{m,n} + \Delta w_{m,n})[\rho \mathcal{P}; z; \rho K^{(m,n)}] a(\tilde{K}^{(n)})}_{=:\hat{w}_{m,n}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; Z; K^{(m,n)}]}.\end{aligned}$$

Thus we've now described  $R_\rho: \underline{w} \mapsto \underline{\hat{w}}$ . Lifting it to sequences, we obtain  $R_\rho$  acting on the space  $\mathcal{W}$  of effective Hamiltonians. In particular,  $(\mathcal{W}, R_\rho)$  defines a discrete dynamical system.

This is only useful for us if repeated iterations of  $R_\rho$  converge to something. We'll argue that this does happen: by (26.5),

$$\hat{w} \sim \rho^{(1+\sigma)(m+n)-1} (w_{m,n} + \Delta w_{m,n}).$$

For all  $m+n \geq 2$  and  $\sigma \geq 0$ , this is contractive. When  $m+n=1$ , we need  $\rho^\sigma < 1$ , so it's contractive when  $\sigma > 0$ . Therefore as long as the cutoff  $\sigma > 0$ , then under repeated iteration of  $R_\rho$ ,  $w_{m,n} \rightarrow 0$ , and we do have a limiting manifold described by

$$\{\alpha_\infty H_f + \beta_\infty P_f'' + 0\}.$$

<sup>39</sup>TODO: ???

<sup>40</sup>TODO: What is this? What space does it operator on? What goes in the dots? What are  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  and  $P_f''$ ?

<sup>41</sup>TODO: what is  $\underline{Q}$ ? What is  $\Delta$ ?

<sup>42</sup>TODO: is this a definition?

<sup>43</sup>TODO: What does  $\Delta$  mean here?

Moreover, since the Feshbach map is isospectral, so is the entire renormalization map.

For the limiting effective Hamiltonian, the ground state is the Fock vacuum  $\Omega$ . This allows one to recursively reconstruct the ground state eigenvalues and eigenvector of  $H_\sigma(p)$ , though we're going to gloss over the details.

Lecture 27.

### Renormalization and eigenvalues: 12/7/17

*"You know, there are entire papers written like this!"*

Recall that we're in the process of understanding the spectrum for QED, and specifically when the electron mass is 1 and at the conserved momentum  $p$ , so we have the fiber Hamiltonian

$$(27.1) \quad H_\sigma(p) = \frac{p^2}{2} + \underbrace{H_f - p \cdot P_f + \frac{1}{2}P_f^2}_T + \underbrace{(p - P_f) \cdot A + \frac{1}{2}A^2}_W$$

on the Fock space fiber  $\mathcal{F}$ , where

$$\begin{aligned} H_f &= \sum_\lambda \int dk \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k) |k| a_\lambda(k) \\ P_f &= \sum_\lambda \int dk \hat{a}_\lambda(k) k \hat{a}_\lambda(k) \\ A &= \sum_k \int \frac{dk}{|k|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(k) (\varepsilon_\lambda(k) \hat{a}_\lambda(k) + \text{h.c.}). \end{aligned}$$

We analyzed this with the Feshbach map. The first step was to let  $P_1 := \chi[H_f < 1]$ , so on  $\text{Im}(P_1)$ ,

$$F_{P_1}[H_\sigma(p) - z] = H^{(0)}[z] = E[z] + T[\mathcal{P}; z] + \sum_{m+n \geq 1} W_{m,n}[w_{m,n}].$$

Here  $\mathcal{P} := (H_f, P_f)$  and  $W_{m,n}$  are the Wick monomials. This is the effective Hamiltonian of the system after a decimation step.

Subsequently, we set up the rest of renormalization. Let  $0 < \rho < 1/2$  and  $F_{P_\rho}$  be the Feshbach map. Then renormalization is the operator  $R_\rho$  on the space  $\mathcal{W}$  of effective Hamiltonians:

$$R_\rho := \mathcal{E}_\rho \circ S_\rho \circ F_{P_\rho}.$$

Here  $P_\rho := \chi[H_f < \rho]$  and  $S_\rho$  is the rescaling operator

$$S_\rho := \frac{1}{\rho} \Gamma_\rho(\cdot) \Gamma_\rho^*,$$

where  $\Gamma_\rho: \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is the unitary operator

$$(\Gamma_\rho f)(k) = \rho^{-3/2} f(\rho^{-1}k).$$

This implies that  $S_\rho[\mathcal{P}] = \mathcal{P}$  and, on  $\text{Im}(P_\rho)$ ,

$$S_\rho[W_{m,n}] \sim \rho^{(1+\sigma)(m+n)-1} W_{m,n},$$

so as  $\sigma \rightarrow 0$ , if  $m+n \geq 1$ , then the  $\rho$  term is less than  $\rho^\sigma$ , and if  $m+n \geq 2$ , it's less than  $\rho^{m+n-1}$ . The remaining term is

$$\mathcal{E}[z]: z \mapsto \frac{1}{\rho}(z + \Delta W_{0,0}[Q; z]) \in (D \setminus \mathbb{R}) \subset \mathbb{C}.$$

The renormalization map preserves the spectrum, so the effective Hamiltonian and the original Hamiltonian are isospectral. So we can iterate this procedure, defining the  $n^{\text{th}}$ -level effective Hamiltonian

$$H^{(n)}[Z_n] := \underbrace{R_\rho \circ R_\rho \circ \dots \circ R_\rho}_{n \text{ times}}[H^{(0)}[z_0]],$$

and these are all isospectral with our original Hamiltonian.

As you might have guessed, we're doing this for a good reason, namely that this process considerably simplifies the spectral analysis. Specifically, on  $\text{Im}(P_1)$ ,

$$H^{(n)}[z_n] = z_n + \underbrace{T^{(n)}[\mathcal{P}; z_n]}_{(I)} + \underbrace{\sum_{m+n \geq 1} W_{m,n}[w_{m,n}^{(n)}]}_{(II)}.$$

We can bound these terms:

$$\|(II)\|_{\text{op}} \leq O(\rho^{n \cdot \sigma}),$$

and

$$T^{(n)}[\mathcal{P}; z_n] = \alpha_n[z_n]H_f + \beta_n[z_n]P_f'' + \underbrace{O(H_f^2) + O(P_f^2) + O(H_f P_f)}_{(III)},$$

and

$$\|(III)\|_{\text{op}} \lesssim \rho^{2n\sigma}.$$

So we do pick up some correction terms, but they're manageable.

Iterating  $R_\rho$  defines a dynamical system on the space of effective Hamiltonians, and as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , there's a limit

$$H^{(\infty)}[z_\infty] = z_\infty + \alpha_\infty[z_\infty]H_f + \beta_\infty[z_\infty]P_f'',$$

and the remaining terms go away! Moreover, we know  $|\beta_\infty| < \alpha_\infty$ . For this Hamiltonian, the ground state is the Fock vacuum  $\Omega_f$ , for  $z_\infty = 0$ . Using isospectrality, we can therefore reconstruct the ground state eigenvalue for  $H_\sigma(p)$ .

Specifically, we have

$$z_1 = \frac{1}{\rho} \left( z_0 + \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)}[\underline{Q}] \right),$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} z_0 &= \rho z_1 - \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)}[\underline{Q}] \\ &= -\Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)} - \rho \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0)}[\underline{Q}] + \rho^2 z_2 \\ z_1 &= \rho z_2 - \Delta W_{0,0}^{(1)}[\underline{Q}] = \dots \\ &= - \underbrace{\sum_{j=0}^n \rho^j \overbrace{\Delta W_{0,0}^{(j)}[\underline{Q}]}^{O(e^2 \rho^{2j\sigma})}}_{\text{convergent!}} + \underbrace{\rho^n z_n}_{\rightarrow 0} \\ &= O(e^2). \end{aligned}$$

So if we let

$$Q_{P_\rho}^{(n)} = Q_{P_\rho}[H^{(n)}] := P_\rho - \bar{P}_\rho \bar{R}^{(n)} \bar{P}_\rho H^{(n)} P_\rho,$$

which on  $\text{Im}(\bar{P}_\rho)$  is equal to  $(\bar{P}_\rho H^{(n)} \bar{P}_\rho)^{-1}$ , then we can define

$$\Psi_n := Q_{P_1}^{(0)} Q_{P_\rho}^{(1)} \Gamma_\rho^* Q_{P_\rho}^{(2)} \Gamma_\rho^* \dots Q_{P_\rho}^{(n)} \Omega_f,$$

then as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\Psi_n$  converges strongly on  $\mathcal{F}$  to  $\Psi_\sigma(p)$ , the ground state of  $H_\sigma(p)$ .

So far we've just been doing algebra. The analysis reemerges, as it must, when we try to understand the correction terms  $\Delta W_{m,n}$ . This is difficult, but offers a chance to make a connection with how physicists think about it, via Feynman diagrams.

**Feynman diagrams** Recalling the definitions of  $T$  and  $W$  from (27.1), notice that they both don't commute with  $P_1$ .

Let's focus on the first decimation step, for which

$$F_{P_1}[H_\sigma(p) - z] = P_1(H_\sigma(p) - z)P_1 - P_1,$$

and on  $\text{Im}(\bar{P}_1)$ , this is also equal to

$$= (\bar{P}_1 T \bar{P}_1 + \bar{P}_1 W \bar{P}_1 - z)^{-1}.$$

Using the Neumann series,

$$= P_1(H_\sigma(p) - z)P_1 - \sum_{L \geq 1} (-1)^L P_1 W \bar{P}_1 (\bar{R}_0[z] \bar{P}_1 W \bar{P}_1)^L,$$

where (on  $\text{Im}(\bar{P}_1)$ )

$$\bar{R}_0[z] = (\bar{P}_1 T \bar{P}_1 - z)^{-1}.$$

We would like to place all the creation and annihilation operators in the standard Wick order, but the details of doing so in this infinite sum are a little fuzzy.

The  $L = 1$  term is

$$P_1(W_1 + W_2)\bar{P}_1 R_0[\bar{z}]\bar{P}_1(W_1 + W_2)P_1,$$

which is simpler than the general case. We can write explicit formulas for the Wick monomials. Start with

$$A_+ := \sum_\lambda \int \frac{dk}{|k|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(k) \varepsilon_\lambda(k) \hat{a}_\lambda^*(k)$$

and  $A_- := A_+^*$ .

*Remark.* These operators satisfy the *Coulomb gauge* condition  $A_\pm \cdot P_f = P_f \cdot A_\pm$ . ◀

Then the Wick monomials are

$$\begin{aligned} W_{1,0} &= eA_+(p - P_f) & W_{0,1} &= e(p - P_f) \cdot A_- \\ W_{2,0} &= \frac{e^2}{2} A_+ \cdot A_+ & W_{1,1} &= \frac{e^2}{2} A_+ \cdot A_- \end{aligned}$$

Therefore if you normal order

$$P_1 A_- \bar{P}_1 \bar{R}_0[z] \bar{P}_1 A_+ P_1,$$

you get the following.

(27.2)

$$e^2 \sum_{\lambda, \lambda'} \int \frac{dk}{|k|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(k) \frac{dk'}{|k'|^{1/2}} \kappa_\sigma(k') P_1(p - P_f) \cdot \varepsilon_\lambda(k) \hat{a}_\lambda(k) \bar{P}_1 \frac{1}{\bar{P}_1(H_f + (1/2)(p - P_f)^2) \bar{P}_1 - z} \bar{P}_1 \hat{a}_{\lambda'}^*(k') \varepsilon_{\lambda'}(k') (p - P_f) P_1.$$

This is, of course, a huge mess, and makes one glad to be a mathematician, instead of a physicist who really has to do stuff with this equation rather than encounter it on a journey. And we're only at  $L = 1$ ; it gets  $O(L!)$  more complicated when  $L$  increases. Some methodical people wrote out what you get for  $L = 3$ .

But! We can simplify (27.2) somewhat using the commutation relations

$$[\hat{a}_\lambda(k), \hat{a}_{\lambda'}^*(k')] = \delta_{\lambda\lambda'} \delta(k - k'),$$

where the first  $\delta$  is a Kronecker delta, and the second one is a Dirac delta. Using this, and the fact that  $\bar{P}_1 = \chi_{[1,\infty)}[H_f]$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} (27.2) &= e^2 \sum_\lambda \int \frac{dk}{|k|} \kappa_\sigma^2(k) P_1^{((p-P_f) \cdot \varepsilon_\lambda(k))^2} \cdot \chi_{[1,\infty)}[H_f + k] \frac{1}{H_f + |k| + (1/2)(p - P_f - k)^2 - z} \cdot \chi_{[1,\infty)}[H_f + k] P_1 + \cdots \\ &= \Delta W_{0,0}^{(0,L=1,1)}[\underline{\mathcal{P}}; z] + \Delta W_{1,1}^{(0,L=1,1)}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\Delta W_{0,0}^{(0,L=1,1)}[\underline{\mathcal{Q}}] = e^2 \sum_\lambda \int \frac{dk}{|k|} \kappa_\sigma^2(k) \frac{(p \cdot \varepsilon_\lambda(k))^2}{|k| + (1/2)(p - k)^2 - z} \chi_{[1,\infty)}[|k|].$$

It should be clear by now that it's extremely unpleasant to continue, and one hopes for a simpler way to proceed.

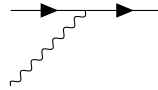
Feynman developed the formalism of Feynman diagrams precisely to handle these kinds of computations: he took seriously the path-integral idea that physically meaningful terms are understood as a sum over all configurations. Therefore one defines some basic combinatorial data encoding them. For example, the term

$$\frac{1}{|k| + (1/2)(p-k)^2 - z}$$

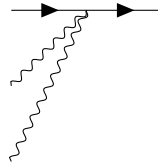
is encoded as a line

$$k \longrightarrow k.$$

We represent the terms for  $A_{\pm}$  with squiggly lines. For example,



denotes an  $eA_+$  term,



denotes an  $(e^2/2)A_+A_+$  term, and so on.<sup>44</sup>

Then, the sum of the terms that we need to calculate is indexed over graphs which have these as their possible vertices, and the number of vertices denotes the order of the contribution. There are *vertex corrections*  $w_{1,0} \mapsto w_{1,0} + \Delta W_{1,0}$ , which can be expressed purely diagrammatically<sup>45</sup>, and there are relationships between different diagrams due to gauge invariance called the *Ward-Takahashi identities*.

Physicists calculate these for many theories, and for higher-order theories.

<sup>44</sup>**TODO:** figure out how to get the rest.

<sup>45</sup>Once I figure it out!